PREFACE.

THE Differential and Integral Calculus is justly considered the most difficult branch of the pure Mathematics.

BY CHARLES DAVIES,

PROFESSOR OF MATHEMATICS IN THE MILITARY ACADEMY,

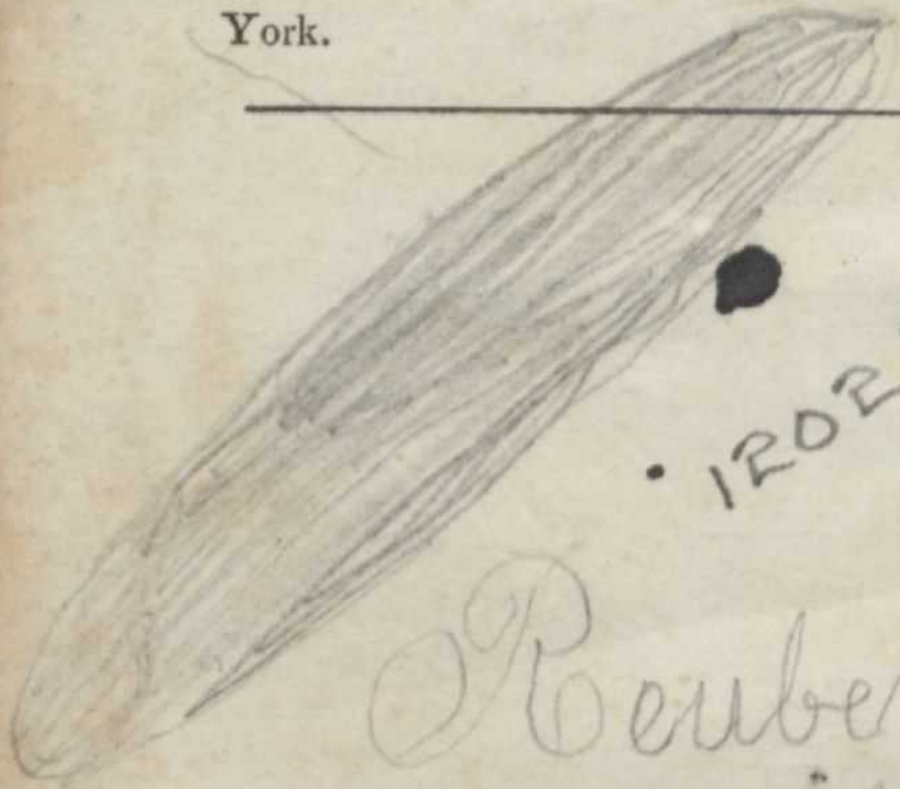
AND

AUTHOR OF THE COMMON SCHOOL ARITHMETIC, ELEMENTS OF DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY, ELEMENTS OF SURVEYING, ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY, AND A TREATISE ON SHADOWS AND PERSPECTIVE.

PUBLISHED BY

WILEY & LONG; COLLINS, KEESE & CO., NEW YORK,—DESILVER, THOMAS & CO., PHILADELPHIA,—RUSSELL, SHATTUCK & CO., BOSTON,—H. F. SUMNER & CO., HARTFORD,—CUSHING & SONS, BALTIMORE,—S. BABCOCK & CO., CHARLESTON, S. C.—TRUMAN & SMITH, CINCINNATI.

1836.



Reuben Smith

William & Mary College

HENRY W. REES, STEREOTYPER,
45 GOLD STREET, NEW YORK.

PREFACE.

THE Differential and Integral Calculus is justly considered the most difficult branch of the pure Mathematics.

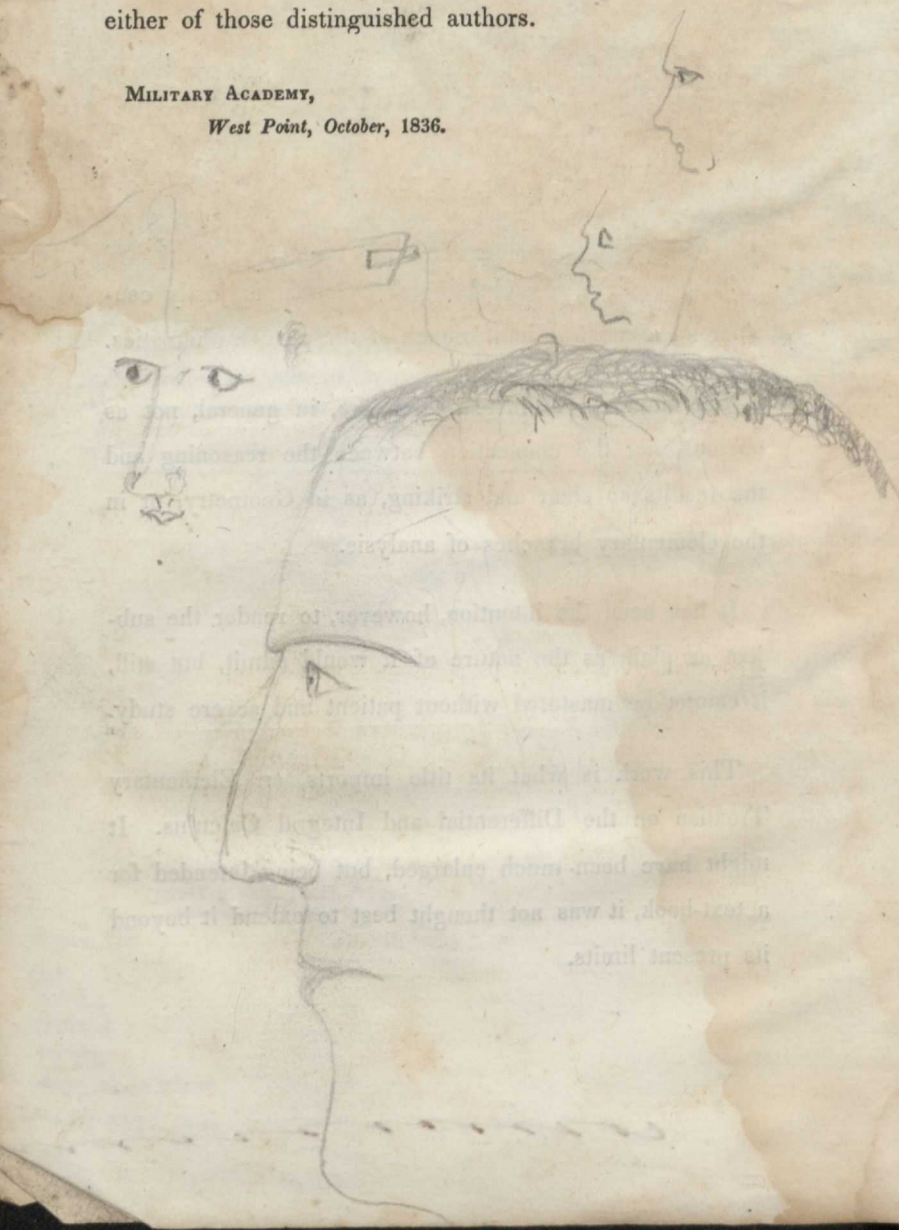
The methods of investigation are, in general, not as obvious, nor the connection between the reasoning and the results so clear and striking, as in Geometry, or in the elementary branches of analysis.

It has been the intention, however, to render the subject as plain as the nature of it would admit, but still, it cannot be mastered without patient and severe study.

This work is what its title imports, an Elementary Treatise on the Differential and Integral Calculus. It might have been much enlarged, but being intended for a text-book, it was not thought best to extend it beyond its present limits.

The works of Boucharlat and Lacroix have been freely used, although the general method of arranging the subjects is quite different from that adopted by either of those distinguished authors.

MILITARY ACADEMY,
West Point, October, 1836.



CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

CHAPTER II.

CHAPTER III.

CHAPTER IV.

CHAPTER V.

CHAPTER VI.

CHAPTER VII.

CHAPTER VIII.

INTEGRAL CALCULUS.

DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS.

CHAPTER I.

Definitions and Introductory Remarks.

1. There are two kinds of quantities which enter into the Differential Calculus: *variables and constants.*

The variable quantities are generally designated by the final letters of the alphabet, x, y, z, &c.; and any values may be attributed to them which will satisfy the equations in which they enter.

The constant quantities are designated by the first letters of the alphabet, a, b, c, &c.; and these preserve the same value throughout the same investigation, whatever values may be attributed to the variables with which they are connected.

2. If two variable quantities are so connected together that any change in the value of the one will necessarily produce a change in the value of the other, they are said to be *functions of each other.*

Thus, in the equation of a given straight line

$$y = ax + b,$$

if we change the value of the ordinate y, the value of x will also undergo a change: hence, y is a function of x, or x a function of y.

This general relation, which merely implies a *dependence of value*, is expressed by

$$y = F(x), \qquad \text{or,} \qquad x = F(y);$$

and the equations are read, y a function of x, and x a function of y. This dependence of value may also be expressed by the equation

$$F(x,\ y) = 0,$$

which is read, function of x, y, equal to 0, and merely implies, that x depends for its value on y, or y on x.

3. The letter which is placed in the first member of the equation is called the *function*, and the one in the second member is called the *variable*. In the equation

$$y = F(x),$$

y is the function and x the variable, and in the equation

$$x = F(y),$$

x is the function and y the variable.

4. In the equation of the straight line

$$y = ax + b,$$

it is plain that if the value of x is increased the value of y will also increase, or if x be diminished the value of y will diminish: hence, y and x *increase together*, or *decrease together*, and y is then said to be an *increasing function* of the variable x.

In the equation of the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 = R^2, \qquad \text{or} \qquad y^2 = R^2 - x^2,$$

the value of y increases when x is diminished, and decreases when x is augmented: when this relation subsists between y and x, y is said to be a *decreasing function*, of the variable x.

5. If in any equation of the form

$$y = F(x),$$

the value of y is expressed in terms of x and constants, as for example, if

$$y = ax^5, \qquad \text{or} \qquad y = 3x^2 + bx^3, \text{ \&c.},$$

y is then said to be an *explicit* function of x.

But if the value of the function is not directly expressed in terms of the variable on which it depends, as in the equation

$$y^4 - 3axy + x^5 = 0;$$

or if the dependence is expressed by means of an intermediate variable, as in the equations

$$y = F(u), \qquad u = F(x),$$

y is then said to be an *implicit* or implied function of x. The roots of an equation, for example, are implicit functions of the coefficients.

6. In every equation of the form

$$y = F(x),$$

either the function y, or the variable x, may be made to

change its value according to any law whatever, and the corresponding change which takes place in the other, will be determined by resolving the equation. Thus, in the equation of the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 = R^2,$$

if we change the value of either x or y by a quantity $\pm h$, the corresponding value of the other variable may be determined from the equation, and the difference between it and the primitive value, will express the change of value.

The law of change is generally imposed on the variable x, and as this law is arbitrary, x is called an *independent variable*.

It simplifies the operations of the calculus, to increase or diminish the variable x uniformly; that is, to change it from one state of value to another by the addition or subtraction of a constant quantity; and since the law of change is arbitrary, this supposition does not render the calculus less general.

7. Although the values of the variable quantities may be changed at pleasure without affecting the values of the constants with which they are connected, there is, nevertheless, a relation between them which it is important to consider.

If in the equation

$$y = F(x),$$

a particular value be attributed either to x or y, the other will be expressed in terms of this value and the constant quantities which enter into the primitive equation. Thus,

in the equation of the straight line

$$y = ax + b,$$

if a particular value be attributed to x, the corresponding value of y will depend on a and b; or if a particular value be attributed to y, the corresponding value of x will likewise depend on a and b. The same will evidently be the case in the equation of the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 = R^2,$$

or in any equation of the form

$$y = F(x).$$

Hence, we see that, although the *changes* which take place in the values of the variables are entirely independent of the constants with which the variables are connected, yet the *absolute* values are dependant on the constants.

8. Since the relations between the variables and constants are not affected by the changes of value which the variables may experience, it follows that, if the constants be determined for particular values of the variables, they will be known for all others.

Thus, in the equation of the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 = R^2,$$

if we make $x = 0$, we have

$$y = \pm R;$$

or if we make $y = 0$, we have

$$x = \pm R,$$

and the value of R will be equal to the distance from the origin to the point in which the circumference cuts the coordinate axes, whatever be the value of x or y.

9. The function y, and the variable x, may be so related to each other as to reduce to 0 at the same time. Thus, in the equation of the parabola

$$y^2 = 2px,$$

which may be placed under the general form

$$F(x, y) = 0, \qquad \text{or} \qquad y = F(x),$$

if we make $x = 0$, we have $y = 0$, or if we make $y = 0$, we shall have $x = 0$.

10. We have thus far supposed the function to depend on a single variable; it may however depend on several. Let us suppose for example, that u depends for its value on x, y, and z, we express this dependence by

$$u = F(x, y, z,)$$

If we make $x = 0$, we have

$$u = F(y, z);$$

if we also make $y = 0$, we have

$$u = F(z);$$

and if in addition, we make $z = 0$, we have

$$u = a\ constant,$$

which constant, may itself be equal to 0.

11. Let us now examine the change which takes place

in the function for any change that may be made in the value of the variable on which it depends.

Let us take, as a first example,

$$u = ax^2,$$

and suppose x to be increased by any quantity h. Designate by u' the new value which u assumes, under this supposition, and we shall have

$$u' = a(x+h)^2,$$

or by developing

$$u' = ax^2 + 2axh + ah^2.$$

If we subtract the first equation from the last, we shall have

$$u' - u = 2axh + ah^2;$$

hence, if the variable x be increased by h, the function will be increased by $2axh + ah^2$.

If both members of the last equation be divided by h, we shall have

$$\frac{u' - u}{h} = 2ax + ah, \quad (1)$$

which expresses the ratio of the increment of the function to that of the variable.

12. The value of the ratio of the increment of the function to that of the variable is composed of two parts, $2ax$ and ah. If now, we suppose h to diminish continually, the value of the ratio will approach to that of $2ax$, to which it will become equal when $h = 0$. The part $2ax$, which is independent of h, is therefore the *limit* of the ratio of

the increment of the function to that of the variable, and is called the *differential coefficient* of u, regarded as a function of x. The term, *limit of the ratio*, designates the ratio at the time h passes from its last value to 0.

If we designate by dx the last value of h, that is, *that value which cannot be diminished without becoming* 0, and by du the corresponding value of $u' - u$, we shall have

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 2ax. \quad (2)$$

The letter d is used merely as a characteristic, and the expressions du, dx, are read, differential of u, *differential* of x.

It may be difficult to understand why the value which h assumes in passing from equation (1) to equation (2), is represented by dx in the first member, and made equal to 0 in the second. We have represented by dx the *last* value of h, and this value forms no appreciable part of h or x. For, if it were a finite quantity, it might be diminished without becoming 0, and therefore would not be the *last* value of h. By designating this last value by dx, we preserve a trace of the letter x, and express at the same time the last change which takes place in h, as it becomes equal to 0.

13. Let us take as a second example,

$$u = ax^3.$$

If we give to x an increment h, we shall have

$$u' = a(x+h)^3 = ax^3 + 3ahx^2 + 3ah^2x + ah^3.$$

hence, $$u' - u = 3ahx^2 + 3ah^2x + ah^3,$$

and the ratio of the increments will be

$$\frac{u' - u}{h} = 3ax^2 + 3ahx + ah^2,$$

and the *limit* of the ratio, or *differential coefficient*,

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 3ax^2.$$

In the function

$$u = nx^4,$$

the differential coefficient is

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 4nx^3.$$

14. We have seen, in the preceding examples, that the differential coefficient, or limit of the ratio of the increment of the function to that of the variable, is entirely independent of the increment attributed to the variable.

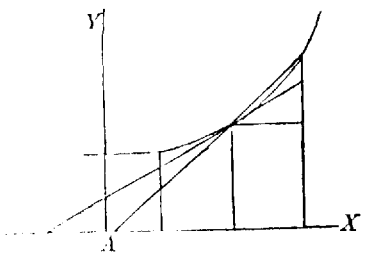
We now propose to show that the same is true for any function whatever.

Every relation between a function u and a variable x, expressed by the equation

$$u = F(x),$$

will subsist between the ordinate and abscissa of a curve.

For, let A be the origin of the rectangular axes, AX, AY.



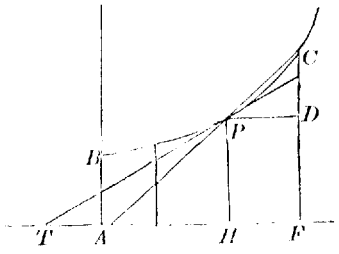
In the equation

$$u = F(x),$$

make $x = 0$, which will give

$u = a$ *constant:*

lay off AB equal to this constant. Then attribute values to x, from 0 to any limit, as well negative as positive, and find from the equation



$$u = F(x),$$

the corresponding values of u. Conceive the values of x to be laid off on the axis of abscissas, and the values of u on the corresponding ordinates. The curve described through the extremities of the ordinates will have for its equation

$$u = F(x). \quad (1)$$

15. Let x represent any abscissa, AH for example, and u the corresponding ordinate HP.

If now we give to x any arbitrary increment h, and make $HH' = h$, the value of u will become equal to FC, which we will designate by u'. We shall then have

$$u' = F(x + h).$$

But $F(x + h) = HP + CD$, and $HP = u = F(x)$.

Now, for a given value of h, CD will vary if P be moved along the curve: hence, CD will depend for its value on x and h, and we shall have

$$CD = F'(x, h):$$

the notation, F', F'', &c., designating new, or different functions of x.

But since CD becomes 0, when $h = 0$, h must be a factor of the second member of the equation, and we may therefore write,

$$CD = F''(x, h)h.$$

Hence, $$u' = F(x+h) = F(x) + F''(x, h)h, \quad (2)$$

and transposing $F(x) = u$, we have

$$u' - u = F''(x, h)h. \quad (3)$$

But since $u' - u = CD = \text{tang } CPD.\ h$, we have

$$u' - u = \text{tang } CPD.h = F''(x, h)h:$$

hence, $$\frac{u' - u}{h} = \text{tang } CPD = F''(x, h). \quad (4)$$

If now we suppose h to diminish continually, the point C will approach the point P, the angle CPD will become nearer and nearer equal to the angle PTH, which the tangent line forms with the axis of abscissas. If we pass to the limit of the ratio, we shall have

$$\frac{du}{dx} = \text{tang } PTH = F''(x); \quad (5)$$

and it remains to show that, this differential coefficient is independent of h.

To prove this, we will observe, that whatever value may be attributed to h, a secant line, APC, can always be drawn through P and the extremity of the corresponding ordinate. The ratio of the increments of the ordinate and abscissa may then be expressed by the tangent of the angle CPD; and since any secant will become the tangent PT, when we pass to the limit, it follows that, *the limit*

of the ratio which is represented by the tangent of the angle PTH, *is independent of the increment* h.

When, therefore, we pass from equation (4) which expresses the ratio of the increment of the function to that of the variable, to equation (5) which expresses the limit of that ratio, the second member of equation (4) must be made independent of h, which is done by making $h = 0$; and since the second member itself does not become 0, it follows that there is at least one term in $F''(x, h)$ which does not contain h.

If then, we divide the second member of equation (4) into two parts, one independent of h, and the other containing h as a factor, it may be written under the form

$$F''(x, h) = F'''(x) + F^{IV}(x, h)h.$$

Substituting this value of $F''(x, h)$ in equation (2), we obtain

$$u' = F(x) + F''(x)h + F^{IV}(x, h)h^2,$$

or,
$$u' = u + F''(x)h + F^{IV}(x, h)h^2,$$

or by omitting a part of the accents,

$$u' = u + F'(x)h + F''(x, h)h^2. \quad (6)$$

Hence, also,

$$\frac{u' - u}{h} = F'(x) + F''(x, h)h, \quad (7)$$

and by passing to the limit

$$\frac{du}{dx} = F'(x). \quad (8)$$

16. Let us now resume the discussion of equation (6),

$$u' = u + F'(x)h + F''(x, h)h^2, \quad (9)$$

This equation expresses the relation which exists between the primitive function u, and the new value u' which it assumes, when an increment h is attributed to the variable x. We see that the new value of the function is composed of three parts.

1st. The primitive function u.

2d. A function of x multiplied by the first power of the increment h.

3d. A function of x and h multiplied by the second power of the increment h.

We may also remark that, *the coefficient of* h *in the second term, is the differential coefficient of the function* u, *and that the third term will vanish when we pass to the limit or make* $h = 0$.

In order to render the form of the equation as simple as possible, let us make

$$F'(x) = P, \quad \text{and} \quad F''(x, h) = P';$$

the equation will then become

$$u' = u + Ph + P'h^2, \quad (10)$$

or,
$$u' - u = Ph + P'h^2.$$

The coefficient P is in general a function of x, yet the relation between u and x may be such as to make P a constant quantity, in which case P' will be 0, or the relation may be such as to render P' constant. These cases will be illustrated by the examples.

17. If we take equation (8), which is

$$\frac{du}{dx} = F'(x) = P,$$

and multiply both members by dx, we have

$$du = P\,dx:$$

hence, *the differential of a function is equal to its differential coefficient multiplied by the differential of the variable.*

18. The differential of the function may also be expressed under another form. For, if we multiply both members of the equation

$$\frac{du}{dx} = F'(x) = P,$$

by dx, and omit to cancel dx in the first member, we shall have

$$\frac{du}{dx}\,dx = P\,dx,$$

in which either member expresses the differential of the function u.

19. We may conclude from the preceding remarks that the differential of a variable function, is the difference between two of its consecutive values, by which terms we mean to designate that difference which cannot be diminished *according to the law of change to which the function has been subjected*, without becoming 0.

20. We also see that, *the Differential Calculus is that branch of mathematics, in which the properties of quantities are determined by means of the changes which take place when the quantities pass from one state of value to another.*

21. If two variable functions u and v, are so connected

together as to be always equal to each other, whatever value may be attributed to either of them, *their differentials will also be equal.*

For, suppose both of them to be functions of an independent variable x. We shall then have (Art. 16),

$$u' = u + Ph + P'h^2,$$

$$v' = v + Qh + Q'h^2.$$

But, since u' and v' are, by hypothesis, equal to each other, as well as u and v, we have

$$Ph + P'h^2 = Qh + Q'h^2,$$

or by dividing by h and passing to the limit

$$P = Q,$$

hence,

$$\frac{du}{dx} = \frac{dv}{dx},$$

and,

$$\frac{du}{dx}dx = \frac{dv}{dx}dx,$$

that is, the differential of u is equal to the differential of v (Art. 18).

22. The reverse of the above proposition is not generally true: that is, *if two differentials are equal to each other we are not at liberty to conclude that the functions from which they were derived are also equal.*

For, if we have the function

$$bu + a = F(x),$$

the values of a and b will not be affected by attributing

and multiply both members by dx, we have

$$du = P\,dx:$$

hence, *the differential of a function is equal to its differential coefficient multiplied by the differential of the variable.*

18. The differential of the function may also be expressed under another form. For, if we multiply both members of the equation

$$\frac{du}{dx} = F'(x) = P,$$

by dx, and omit to cancel dx in the first member, we shall have

$$\frac{du}{dx}\,dx = P\,dx,$$

in which either member expresses the differential of the function u.

19. We may conclude from the preceding remarks that the differential of a variable function, is the difference between two of its consecutive values, by which terms we mean to designate that difference which cannot be diminished *according to the law of change to which the function has been subjected*, without becoming 0.

20. We also see that, *the Differential Calculus is that branch of mathematics, in which the properties of quantities are determined by means of the changes which take place when the quantities pass from one state of value to another.*

21. If two variable functions u and v, are so connected

* A differential is the part of a departed quantity
Lamberg

together as to be always equal to each other, whatever value may be attributed to either of them, *their differentials will also be equal.*

For, suppose both of them to be functions of an independent variable x. We shall then have (Art. 16),

$$u' - u = Ph + P'h^2,$$

$$v' - v = Qh + Q'h^2.$$

But, since u' and v' are, by hypothesis, equal to each other, as well as u and v, we have

$$Ph + P'h^2 = Qh + Q'h^2,$$

or by dividing by h and passing to the limit

$$P = Q,$$

hence,
$$\frac{du}{dx} = \frac{dv}{dx},$$

and,
$$\frac{du}{dx}dx = \frac{dv}{dx}dx,$$

that is, the differential of u is equal to the differential of v (Art. 18).

22. The reverse of the above proposition is not generally true: that is, *if two differentials are equal to each other we are not at liberty to conclude that the functions from which they were derived are also equal.*

For, if we have the function

$$bu + a = F(x),$$

the values of a and b will not be affected by attributing

an increment h to x: we shall therefore have (Art. 16),

$$bu' + a = bu + a + Ph + P'h^2,$$

or,
$$b\frac{(u'-u)}{h} = P + P'h,$$

or by passing to the limit

$$b\frac{du}{dx} = P, \quad \text{hence,} \quad bdu = Pdx.$$

Now, bdu is the differential of the function bu as well as of the function $bu + a$: and hence we may conclude

1st. *That every constant quantity connected with a variable by the sign plus or minus will disappear in the differentiation.*

2d. *That the differential of the product of a variable quantity by a constant, is equal to the differential of the variable multiplied by the constant.*

3d. *That the differential of a constant quantity is equal to* 0.

CHAPTER II.

Differentiation of Algebraic Functions—Successive Differentials—Taylor's and Maclaurin's Theorems.

23. Algebraic functions are those which involve the sum or difference, the product or quotient, the roots or powers, of the variables. They may be divided into two classes, real and imaginary.

24. Let it be required to find the differential of the function.

$$u = ax.$$

If we give to x an increment h, and designate the second state of the function by u', we shall have

$$u' = ax + ah = u + ah,$$

$$\frac{u' - u}{h} = a:$$

hence, $du = adx$, or $\frac{du}{dx}dx = adx.$

25. As a second example, let us take the function

$$u = ax^2.$$

If we give to x an increment h, we have

$$u' = ax^2 + 2ahx + ah^2,$$

$$\frac{u'-u}{h} = 2ax + ah:$$

hence, $$du = 2ax\,dx.$$

26. For a third example, take the function

$$u = ax^3:$$

giving to x an increment h, we have

$$\frac{u'-u}{h} = 3ax^2 + 3axh + ah^2,$$

or passing to the limit

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 3ax^2; \quad \text{hence,} \quad du = 3ax^2\,dx.$$

27. Let us now suppose the function u to be composed of several variable terms: that is, of the form

$$u = y + z - w = F(x),$$

in which y, z, and w, are functions of x.

If we give to x an increment h, we shall have

$$u' - u = (y' - y) + (z - z') + (w' - w):$$

hence, (Art. 16),

$$u' - u = (Ph + P'h^2) + (Qh + Q'h^2) - (Lh + L'h^2),$$

or, $$\frac{u'-u}{h} = (P + P'h) + (Q + Q'h) - (L + L'h),$$

or by passing to the limit

$$\frac{du}{dx} = P + Q - L,$$

and multiplying both members by dx, we have

$$\frac{du}{dx}dx = P\,dx + Q\,dx - L\,dx.$$

But since P, Q, and L, are the differential coefficients of y, z, and w, regarded as functions of x, it follows (Art. 17) that, *the differential of the sum, or difference of any number of functions, dependent on the same variable, is equal to the sum or difference of their differentials taken separately.*

28. Let us now determine the differential of the product of two variable functions.

If we designate the functions by u and v, and suppose them to depend on a variable x, we shall have

$$u' = u + Ph + P'h^2,$$

$$v' = v + Qh + Q'h^2,$$

and by multiplying

$$u'v' = (u + Ph + P'h^2)\,(v + Qh + Q'h^2);$$

if we perform the multiplication, and omit the terms which contain h^2, which we may do, since these terms will vanish, when we pass to the limit, there will result,

$$\frac{u'v' - uv}{h} = vP + uQ,$$

or passing to the limit,

$$\frac{d(uv)}{dx} = vP + uQ;$$

therefore, $$d(uv) = vP\,dx + uQ\,dx = v\,du + u\,dv.$$

Hence, *the differential of the product of two functions dependent on the same variable, is equal to the sum of the*

$P = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}$, $Q = \frac{\partial v}{\partial x}$

products which arise by multiplying each by the differential of the other.

29. If the differential of the product be divided by the product itself, we shall have

$$\frac{d(uv)}{uv} = \frac{du}{u} + \frac{dv}{v},$$

that is, *equal to the sum of the quotients which arise by dividing each differential by its variable.*

We can easily determine, from the last formula, the differential of the product of any number of functions.

For this purpose, put $v = ts$, then

$$\frac{dv}{v} = \frac{d(ts)}{ts} = \frac{dt}{t} + \frac{ds}{s},$$

and by substituting for v in the last equation, we have

$$\frac{d(uts)}{uts} = \frac{du}{u} + \frac{dt}{t} + \frac{ds}{s};$$

and in a similar manner, we should find

$$\frac{d(utsr\ldots.)}{utsr\ldots.} = \frac{du}{u} + \frac{dt}{t} + \frac{ds}{s} + \frac{dr}{r}\ldots. \text{ \&c.}$$

If in the equation

$$\frac{d(uts)}{uts} = \frac{du}{u} + \frac{dt}{t} + \frac{ds}{s},$$

we multiply by the denominator of the first member, we shall have

$$d(uts) = tsdu + usdt + utds;$$

and hence, *the differential of the product of any number of functions, is equal to the sum of the products which*

arise by multiplying the differential of each function by the product of the others.

30. To obtain the differential of a fraction of the form $\frac{u}{v}$ we make

$$\frac{u}{v} = t, \quad \text{and hence} \quad u = tv.$$

Differentiating both members, we find

$$du = vdt + tdv\,;$$

finding the value of dt, and substituting for t its value $\frac{u}{v}$, we obtain

$$dt = \frac{du}{v} - \frac{udv}{v^2},$$

or by reducing to a common denominator

$$dt = \frac{vdu - udv}{v^2}\,;$$

hence, *the differential of a fraction is equal to the denominator into the differential of the numerator, minus the numerator into the differential of the denominator, divided by the square of the denominator.*

31. If the numerator u is constant in the fraction $t = \frac{u}{v}$, its differential will be 0 (Art. 22), and we shall have

$$dt = -\frac{udv}{v^2}, \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{dt}{dv} = -\frac{u}{v^2}.$$

When u is constant, v is a decreasing function of t (Art. 4), and the differential coefficient of t is negative.

This is only a particular case of a general proposition

For, let u be a decreasing function of x. Then, if we give to x any increment, as $+h$, we have

$$u' = u + Ph + P'h^2,$$

or,

$$u' - u = Ph + P'h^2.$$

But by hypothesis $u > u'$; hence, the second member is essentially negative; and passing to the limit,

$$\frac{du}{dx} = -P.$$

hence, *a decreasing function and its differential coefficient will be affected with contrary signs.*

32. To find the differential of any power of a function, let us first take the function u^n, in which n is a positive and whole number. This function may be considered as composed of n factors each equal to u. Hence, (Art. 29),

$$\frac{d(u^n)}{u^n} = \frac{d(uuuu\ldots.)}{(uuuu\ldots.)} = \frac{du}{u} + \frac{du}{u} + \frac{du}{u} + \frac{du}{u} + \ldots\ldots$$

But since there are n equal factors in the first member, there will be n equal terms in the second; hence,

$$\frac{d(u^n)}{u^n} = \frac{ndu}{u};$$

therefore,

$$d(u^n) = nu^{n-1}du.$$

If n is fractional, represent it by $\frac{r}{s}$, and make

$$v = u^{\frac{r}{s}}, \qquad \text{whence,} \qquad u^r = v^s;$$

and since r and s are supposed to represent entire numbers, we shall have

$$ru^{r-1}du = sv^{s-1}dv;$$

from which we find

$$dv = \frac{ru^{r-1}}{sv^{s-1}}du = \frac{ru^{r-1}}{su^{\frac{r}{s}(s-1)}}du,$$

or by reducing

$$dv = \frac{r}{s}u^{\frac{r}{s}-1}du;$$

which is of the same form as the function

$$d(u^n) = nu^{n-1}du,$$

by substituting the exponent $\frac{r}{s}$ for n.

Finally, if n is negative, we shall have

$$u^{-n} = \frac{1}{u^n},$$

from which we have (Art. 31),

$$d(u^{-n}) = d\left(\frac{1}{u^n}\right) = \frac{-d(u^n)}{u^{2n}} = \frac{-nu^{n-1}\ du}{u^{2n}};$$

hence, by reducing

$$d(u^{-n}) = -nu^{-n-1}du.$$

Hence, generally, *the differential of any power of a function, is equal to the exponent multiplied by the function with its primitive exponent minus unity, into the differential of the function.*

33. Having frequent occasion to differentiate radicals of the second degree, we will give a specific rule for this class of functions.

Let $v = \sqrt{u}$, or $v = u^{\frac{1}{2}}$;

then, $dv = \frac{1}{2}u^{\frac{1}{2}-1}du = \frac{1}{2}u^{-\frac{1}{2}}du = \frac{du}{2\sqrt{u}}$;

that is, *the differential of a radical of the second degree, is equal to the differential of the quantity under the sign, divided by twice the radical.*

34. It has been remarked (Art. 2), that in an equation of the form

$$u = F(x),$$

we may regard u as the function, and x as the variable, or x as the function, and u as the variable. We will now show that, *the differential coefficient which is obtained by regarding* u *as a function of* x, *is the reciprocal of that which is obtained by regarding* x *as a function of* u.

If we consider u as the function, the ratio of the increments will be represented by

$$\frac{u' - u}{x' - x} = \frac{1}{\frac{x' - x}{u' - u}}, \quad (1)$$

or since $x' - x = h$, we have (Art. 16),

$$\frac{u' - u}{h} = \frac{1}{\frac{h}{Ph + P'h^2}} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{P + P'h}}$$

or by passing to the limit

$$\frac{du}{dx} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{P}}.$$

But when we pass to the limit, the denominator of the second member of equation (1) becomes $\frac{dx}{du}$; hence,

$$\frac{dx}{du} = \frac{1}{P} = \frac{1}{\left(\frac{du}{dx}\right)}$$

To illustrate this by an example, let

$$u = x^3, \quad \text{whence} \quad x = \sqrt[3]{u} = u^{\frac{1}{3}}.$$

Now,
$$\frac{du}{dx} = 3x^2 = 3u^{\frac{2}{3}};$$

but regarding x as the function

$$\frac{dx}{du} = \frac{1}{3}u^{-\frac{2}{3}} = \frac{1}{3u^{\frac{2}{3}}}.$$

35. If we have three variables u, y, and x, which are mutually dependant on each other, the relations between them may be expressed by the equations

$$u = F(y), \qquad \text{and} \qquad y = F'(x).$$

If now we attribute to x an increment h, and designate by k, the change which takes place in y, we shall have (Art. 16),

$$u' = u + Pk + P'k^2, \qquad y' = y + Qh + Q'h^2,$$

and
$$\frac{u' - u}{k} = P + P'k, \qquad \frac{y' - y}{h} = Q + Q'h,$$

If we multiply these equations together, member by member, we shall have

$$\frac{u' - u}{k} \times \frac{y' - y}{h} = (P + Ph)(Q + Qh);$$

but $k = y' - y$; hence, by dividing and passing to the limit, we have

$$\frac{du}{dx} = \frac{du}{dy} \times \frac{dy}{dx};$$

and hence, if three quantities are mutually dependant on

each other, *the differential coefficient of the first regarded as a function of the third, will be equal to the differential coefficient of the first regarded as a function of the second, multiplied by the differential coefficient of the second regarded as a function of the third.*

36. Let us take as an example

$$v = bu^3, \qquad u = ax^2,$$

we find

$$\frac{dv}{du} = 3bu^2, \qquad \frac{du}{dx} = 2ax.$$

But, $$\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{dv}{du} \times \frac{du}{dx} = 3bu^2 \times 2ax = 6abu^2x;$$

and by substituting for u, its value a^2x^4,

$$\frac{dv}{dx} = 6a^3bx^5, \qquad \text{and} \qquad du = 6a^3bx^5dx.$$

EXAMPLES.

1. Find the differential of u in the expression

$$u = \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}.$$

Put $a^2 - x^2 = y$, then $u = y^{\frac{1}{2}}$, and the dependence between u and x, is expressed by means of y, and u is an implicit function of x. Differentiating, we find

$$\frac{du}{dy} = +\frac{1}{2}y^{-\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{1}{2}(a^2 - x^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}, \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{dy}{dx} = -2x;$$

by multiplying the coefficients together we obtain

$$\frac{du}{dx} = -\frac{1}{2}(a^2 - x^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}} 2x = \frac{-x}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}};$$

hence,

$$du = \frac{-xdx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}.$$

2. Find the differential of the function

$$u = (a + bx^n)^m.$$

Place $a + bx^n = y$: then $u = y^m$; and

$$\frac{du}{dy} = my^{m-1} = m(a + bx^n)^{m-1}.$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = nbx^{n-1};$$

hence,

$$\frac{du}{dx} = mnb(a + bx^n)^{m-1} x^{n-1}.$$

$$du = mnb(a + bx^n)^{m-1} x^{n-1} dx.$$

3. Find the differential of the function

$$u = x(a^2 + x^2)\sqrt{a^2 - x^2},$$

$$du = \left((a^2 + x^2)\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}\right)dx + x\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}\, d(a^2 + x^2),$$

$$+ x(a^2 + x^2) d\sqrt{a^2 - x^2},$$

in which the operations in the last two terms are only indicated. If we perform them, we find

$$d(a^2 + x^2) = d(x^2) = 2xdx,$$

$$d\sqrt{a^2 - x^2} = \frac{d(-x^2)}{2\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = \frac{-xdx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}.$$

Substituting these values, we find

$$du = \left[(a^2+x^2)\sqrt{a^2-x^2} + 2x^2\sqrt{a^2-x^2} - \frac{x^2(a^2+x^2)}{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}\right]dx;$$

or, reducing to a common denominator and cancelling the like terms,

$$du = \frac{(a^4+a^2x^2-4x^4)dx}{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}.$$

4. Find the differential of the function

$$u = \frac{a^2-x^2}{a^4+a^2x^2+x^4}.$$

$$du = \frac{(a^4+a^2x^2+x^4)d(a^2-x^2) - (a^2-x^2)d(a^4+a^2x^2+x^4)}{(a^4+a^2x^2+x^4)^2},$$

from which we find

$$du = \frac{-2x(2a^4+2a^2x^2-x^4)dx}{(a^4+a^2x^2+x^4)^2}.$$

5. Find the differential of the function

$$u = \sqrt[4]{\left(a-\frac{b}{\sqrt{x}}+\sqrt[3]{(c^2-x^2)^2}\right)^3}.$$

Make $\qquad y = \frac{b}{\sqrt{x}}, \qquad z = \sqrt[3]{(c^2-x^2)^2},$

then we shall have

$$u = \sqrt[4]{(a-y+z)^3} = (a-y+z)^{\frac{3}{4}};$$

we therefore have (Art. 32),

$$du = \frac{3}{4}(a-y+z)^{\frac{3}{4}-1}d(a-y+z),$$

$$= \frac{3}{4}(a-y+z)^{-\frac{1}{4}}(-dy+dz),$$

$$= \frac{-3dy+3dz}{4\sqrt[4]{a-y+z}}.$$

But from the equations above, we find

$$dy = d\left(\frac{b}{\sqrt{x}}\right) = -b\frac{d\sqrt{x}}{x} = \frac{-bdx}{2x\sqrt{x}};$$

$$dz = d(c^2-x^2)^{\frac{2}{3}} = \frac{2}{3}(c^2-x^2)^{\frac{2}{3}-1}d(c^2-x^2),$$

$$= \frac{2}{3}(c^2-x^2)^{-\frac{1}{3}} \times -2xdx = \frac{-4xdx}{3\sqrt[3]{c^2-x^2}}.$$

Substituting these values of dy and dz, in the expression for du, we find

$$du = \left\{ \frac{\frac{3b}{2x\sqrt{x}} - \frac{4x}{\sqrt[3]{c^2-x^2}}}{4\sqrt[4]{a-\frac{b}{\sqrt{x}}+\sqrt[3]{(c^2-x^2)^2}}} \right\} dx.$$

6. $u = \dfrac{1}{x}$, $\qquad du = \dfrac{-dx}{x^2}$.

7. $u = \dfrac{1}{x^n}$, $\qquad du = \dfrac{-ndx}{x^{n+1}}$.

8. $u = \sqrt{2ax + x^2}$, $\quad du = \dfrac{(a+x)dx}{\sqrt{2ax+x^2}}$.

9. $u = (a^2 + x^2)^3$, $\quad du = 6(a^2+x^2)^2 x dx$.

10. $u = a^6 + 3a^4x^2 + 3a^2x^4 + x^6$, $\quad du = 6(a^2+x^2)^2 x dx$.

11. $u = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$, $\quad du = \dfrac{x dx}{(1-x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$.

12. $u = \dfrac{x}{x+\sqrt{1-x^2}}$, $\quad du = \dfrac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}\left(x+\sqrt{1-x^2}\right)^2}$.

13. $u = \left(a+\sqrt{x}\right)^3$, $\quad du = \dfrac{3\left(a+\sqrt{x}\right)^2 dx}{2\sqrt{x}}$.

14. $u = \left[a+\sqrt{b-\dfrac{c}{x^2}}\right]^4$, $\quad du = \dfrac{\dfrac{4c}{x^3}\left[a+\sqrt{b^2-\dfrac{c}{x^2}}\right]^3 dx}{\sqrt{b-\dfrac{c}{x^2}}}$.

15. $u = x^2y^2$ $\quad du = 2x^2y dy + 2y^2x dx$.

16. $u = \sqrt{a^2+x^2} \times \sqrt{b^2+y^2}$, $du = \dfrac{(b^2+y^2)x dx + (a^2+x^2)y dy}{\sqrt{a^2+x^2}\,\sqrt{b^2+y^2}}$.

17. $u = \dfrac{x^n}{(1+x)^n}$, $\quad du = \dfrac{nx^{n-1}dx}{(1+x)^{n+1}}$.

18. $u = \dfrac{1+x^2}{1-x^2}$, $\quad du = \dfrac{4x dx}{(1-x^2)^2}$.

19. $u = \dfrac{x+y}{z^3}$, $\quad du = \dfrac{z(dx+dy) - (x+y)3dz}{z^4}$.

20. $u = \dfrac{\sqrt{1+x}+\sqrt{1-x}}{\sqrt{1+x}-\sqrt{1-x}}$, $du = -\dfrac{dx(1+\sqrt{1-x^2})}{x^2\sqrt{1-x^2}}$.

21. Find the differential coefficient of

$$F(x) = 8x^4 - 3x^3 - 5x$$

Ans. $32x^3 - 9x^2 - 5$.

22. Find the differential coefficient of

$$F(x) = (x^3 + a)(3x^2 + b)$$

Ans. $15x^4 + 3x^2b + 6ax$.

23. Find the differential coefficient of

$$F(x) = (ax + x^2)^2,$$

Ans. $2(ax + x^2)(a + 2x)$.

24. Find the differential coefficient of

$$F(x) = \frac{x}{x + \sqrt{1-x^2}},$$

Ans. $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}(1+2x\sqrt{1-x^2})}$.

Of Successive Differentials.

37. It has been remarked (Art. 16), that the differential coefficient is generally a function of x. It may therefore be differentiated, and x may be regarded as the independent variable. A new differential coefficient may thus be obtained, which is called the *second differential coefficient.*

38. In passing from the function u to the first differential coefficient, the exponent of x in every term in which x enters, will be changed; and hence, the relation which exists between the primitive function u and the variable x, is different from that which will exist between the first differential coefficient and x. Hence, the same change in x will occasion different degrees of change in the primitive function and in the first differential coefficient.

The second differential coefficient will, in general, be a function of x: hence, a new differential coefficient may be formed from it, which will also be a function of x; and so on, for succeeding differential coefficients.

If we designate the successive differential coefficients by

$$p, \quad q, \quad r, \quad s, \quad \&c.,$$

we shall have

$$\frac{du}{dx} = p, \qquad \frac{dp}{dx} = q, \qquad \frac{dq}{dx} = r, \quad \&c.$$

But the differential of p is obtained by differentiating its value $\frac{du}{dx}$, regarding the denominator dx as constant; we therefore have

$$d\left(\frac{du}{dx}\right) = dp, \qquad \text{or,} \qquad \frac{d^2u}{dx} = dp,$$

and by substituting for dp its value, we have

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2} = q.$$

The notation d^2u, indicates that the function u has been differentiated twice, and is read, *second differential of* u. The denominator dx^2 expresses *the square of the differential of* x, and not the differential of x^2. It is read, *differential square of* x, or differential of x *squared.*

If we differentiate the value of q, we have

$$d\left(\frac{d^2u}{dx^2}\right) = dq, \qquad \text{or,} \qquad \frac{d^3u}{dx^2} = dq\,;$$

hence, $$\frac{d^3u}{dx^3} = r, \quad \&c.,$$

and in the same manner we may find

$$\frac{d^4u}{dx^4} = s,$$

The third differential coefficient $\frac{d^3u}{dx^3}$, is read, third differential of u divided by dx cubed; and the differential coefficients which succeed it, are read in a similar manner.

Hence, the successive differential coefficients are

$$\frac{du}{dx} = p, \qquad \frac{d^2u}{dx^2} = q, \qquad \frac{d^3u}{dx^3} = r, \qquad \frac{d^4u}{dx^4} = s, \quad \&c.,$$

from which we see, that each differential coefficient is deduced from the one which precedes it, in the same way that the first is deduced from the primitive function.

39. If we take a function of the form

$$u = ax^n,$$

we shall have for the first differential coefficient,

$$\frac{du}{dx} = nax^{n-1}.$$

If we now consider n, a, and dx, as constant, we shall have for the second differential coefficient

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2} = n(n-1)ax^{n-2},$$

and for the third,

$$\frac{d^3u}{dx^3} = n(n-1)(n-2)\,ax^{n-3},$$

and for the fourth,

$$\frac{d^4u}{dx^4} = n(n-1)(n-2)(n-3)ax^{n-4}.$$

It is plain, that when n is a positive whole number, the function

$$u = ax^n,$$

will have n differential coefficients. For, when n differentiations shall have been made, the exponent of x in the second member will be 0; hence, the nth differential coefficient will be constant, and the succeeding ones will be equal to 0. Thus,

$$\frac{d^nu}{dx^n} = n(n-1)(n-2)(n-3)\ldots\ldots a.1,$$

and,

$$\frac{d^{n+1}u}{dx^{n+1}} = 0.$$

Taylor's Theorem.

40. TAYLOR'S THEOREM explains the method of developing into a series any function of the sum or difference of two variables that are independent of each other.

41. Before giving the demonstration of this theorem, it will be necessary to prove a principle on which it depends, viz: *if we have a function of the sum or difference of two variables of the form*

$$u = F(x \pm y),$$

the differential coefficient will be the same if we suppose x *to vary and* y *to remain constant, as when we suppose* y *to vary and* x *to remain constant.*

For, make $x \pm y = x'$:

we shall then have

$$u = F(x')$$

and

$$\frac{du}{dx'} = p.$$

If we suppose y to remain constant and x to vary, we have

$$dx' = dx,$$

and if we suppose x to remain constant and y to vary, we have

$$dx' = dy.$$

But since the differential coefficient p is independent of dx' (Art. 15), it will have the same value whether,

$$dx' = dx, \qquad \text{or,} \qquad dx' = dy.$$

To illustrate this principle by a particular example, let us take

$$u = (x + y)^n.$$

If we suppose x to vary and y to remain constant, we find

$$\frac{du}{dx} = n(x + y)^{n-1},$$

and if we suppose y to vary and x to remain constant, we find

$$\frac{du}{dy} = n(x + y)^{n-1},$$

the same as under the first supposition.

42. It is evident that the

$$F(x + y),$$

must be expressed in terms of the two variables x and y, and of the constants which enter into the function.

Let us then assume

$$F(x + y) = A + By^a + Cy^b + Dy^c +, \text{ \&c.},$$

in which the terms are arranged according to the ascending powers of y, and in which A, B, C, D, &c., are independent of y, but functions of x, and dependant on all the constants which enter the primitive function. It is now required to find such values for the exponents a, b, c, &c., and the coefficients A, B, C, D, &c., as shall render the development true for all possible values which may be attributed to x and y.

In the first place, there can be no negative exponents. For, if any term were of the form

$$By^{-a},$$

it may be written

$$\frac{B}{y^a},$$

and making $y = 0$, this term would become infinite, and we should have

$$F(x) = \infty,$$

which is absurd, since function of x, which is independent of y, does not necessarily become infinite when $y = 0$.

The first term A, of the development, is the value which the primitive function assumes when we make $y = 0$. If we designate this value by u, we shall have

$$F(x) = u.$$

If we make

$$F(x + y) = u',$$

and differentiate, under the supposition that x varies and y remains constant, we shall have

$$\frac{du'}{dx} = \frac{dA}{dx} + \frac{dB}{dx}y^a + \frac{dC}{dx}y^b + \frac{dD}{dx}y^c + \quad \&c.;$$

and if we differentiate, regarding y as a variable and x as constant, we shall find

$$\frac{du'}{dy} = aBy^{a-1} + bCy^{b-1} + cDy^{c-1} +, \&c.:$$

But these differential coefficients are equal to each other (Art. 41); hence, the second members of the equations

are equal, and since the coefficients of the series are independent of y, and the equality exists whatever be the value of y, it follows that the corresponding terms in each series will contain like powers of y, and that the coefficients of y in these terms will be equal (Alg. Art. 208). Hence,

$$a-1=0, \qquad b-1=a, \qquad c-1=b, \quad \&c.,$$

and consequently

$$a=1, \qquad b=2, \qquad c=3, \quad \&c.;$$

and comparing the coefficients, we find

$$B=\frac{dA}{dx}, \quad C=\frac{1}{2}\frac{dB}{dx}, \quad D=\frac{1}{3}\frac{dC}{dx}.$$

And since we have made

$$F(x)=A=u, \qquad \text{and} \qquad F(x+y)=u',$$

we shall have

$$A=u, \quad B=\frac{du}{dx}, \quad C=\frac{d^2u}{1.2\,dx^2}, \quad D=\frac{d^3u}{1.2.3\,dx^3};$$

and consequently,

$$u'=u+\frac{du}{dx}y+\frac{d^2u}{dx^2}\frac{y^2}{1.2}+\frac{d^3u}{dx^3}\frac{y^3}{1.2.3}+, \quad \&c.$$

43. This theorem gives the following development for the function

$$u'=(x+y)^n,$$

$$u=x^n, \qquad \frac{du}{dx}=nx^{n-1}, \qquad \frac{d^2u}{dx^2}=n(n-1)x^{n-1}, \quad \&c.:$$

hence,

$$u' = (x+y)^n = x^n + nx^{n-1}y + \frac{n(n-1)}{1.2}x^{n-2}y^2,$$

$$+ \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{1.2.3}x^{n-3}y^3 +, \quad \&c.$$

44. The theorem of Taylor may also be applied to the development of the second state of any function of the form

$$u = F(x),$$

when x receives an arbitrary increment h, and becomes $x+h$. For, if we substitute h for y, we have

$$u' = u + \frac{du}{dx}h + \frac{d^2u}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3u}{dx^3}\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} +, \ \&c.;$$

hence, the difference between the two states of the function is

$$u' - u = \frac{du}{dx}h + \frac{du^2}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3u}{dx^3}\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} +, \ \&c.,$$

in which the difference is expressed in terms of the differential coefficients and the ascending powers of the increment.

If we now suppose h to diminish continually, the sign of the limit of the series will depend on that of the first term $\frac{du}{dx}h$, or if h is positive, on that of the coefficient $\frac{du}{dx}$.

For, by dividing by h, we have

$$\frac{u'-u}{h} = \frac{du}{dx} + \frac{d^2u}{dx^2}\frac{h}{1.2} + \frac{d^3u}{dx^3}\frac{h^2}{1.2.3} +, \ \&c.,$$

and by passing to the limit

$$du = \frac{du}{dx} \times dx:$$

hence, when a series is expressed in the powers of a variable which we suppose to be continually diminished, *the sign of the limit of the series will depend on the sign of the term which contains the lowest power of the variable.*

45. *Remark.* The theorem of Taylor has been demonstrated under the supposition, that the *form* of the function

$$u' = F(x + y),$$

is independent of the particular values which may be attributed to either of the variables x or y. Hence, when we make $y = 0$, and obtain

$$F(x) = u;$$

this function of x ought to preserve the same form as $F(x + y)$; else there would be values of x in one of the functions,

$$u' = F(x + y), \qquad u = F(x),$$

which would not be found in the other, and consequently some of the values of x would be made to disappear when a particular value is assigned to y, which is entirely contrary to the supposition.

If the function be of the form

$$u' = b + \sqrt{a - x + y},$$

we shall have

$$u = b + \sqrt{a - x}.$$

If we now make $x = a$, we shall have

$$u' = b + \sqrt{y}, \qquad \text{and} \qquad u = b,$$

in which we see, that u' and u are expressed under different forms; and hence, the particular value of $y = 0$ changes the form of the function, which is contrary to the hypothesis of Taylor's theorem. This particular case is therefore not included in the theorem of Taylor.

46. If the function is of the form

$$u' = (x + \log y),$$

when we make $y = 0$, we have

$$u = \pm \infty,$$

according as the base of the system of logarithms is less or greater than unity (Alg. Art. 247 and 248).

Or, if we have

$$u' = x + \operatorname{cosec} y, \qquad \text{or} \qquad u' = x + \cot y,$$

we shall have for $y = 0$

$$u = \infty,$$

in all of which cases the form of the function is changed by making $y = 0$.

Hence, there are two classes of cases to which the theorem of Taylor does not apply.

1st. For any value of x which being substituted for x under a radical, causes the radical to disappear in

$$F(x) = u, \quad \text{and not in} \quad F(x + y) = u',$$

2d. For every relation between x and y in which if we make $y = 0$, we find $F(x) = \infty$.

47. If we have a function of the form

$$u' = b + \sqrt[n]{a - x + y},$$

in which n is a whole number, all the differential coefficients for $x = a$ will become infinite. For, we have

$$u = b + \sqrt[n]{a - x} = b + (a - x)^{\frac{1}{n}},$$

hence,

$$\frac{du}{dx} = -\frac{1}{n}\frac{1}{(a-x)^{\frac{n-1}{n}}},$$

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2} = \frac{(1-n)}{n^2}\frac{1}{(a-x)^{\frac{2n-1}{n}}},$$

&c. &c.

all of which become infinite when we make $x = a$.

Maclaurin's Theorem.

48. MACLAURIN'S THEOREM explains the method of developing into a series any function of a single variable.

Let us suppose the function to be of the form

$$u = F(x).$$

It is plain that the value of $F(x)$ must be expressed in terms of x, and of the constants which enter into $F(x)$.

Let us therefore assume

$$u = A + Bx^n + Cx^p + Dx^r + \text{, \&c.,}$$

in which the terms are arranged according to the ascending powers of x, and in which A, B, C, D, &c., are

independent of x, and dependent on the constants which enter into $F(x)$.

It is now required to find such values for the exponents a, b, c, &c., and the coefficients A, B, C, D, &c., as shall render the development true for all possible values which may be attributed to x.

If we make $x = 0$, u takes that value which the $F(x)$ assumes under this supposition, and if we designate that value by U we shall have

$$U = A.$$

The first differential coefficient is

$$\frac{du}{dx} = aBx^{a-1} + bCx^{b-1} + cDx^{c-1} + \&c,$$

and since this does not necessarily become 0 when we make $x = 0$, it follows that there must be one term in the second member of the form x^0: hence,

$$a - 1 = 0, \qquad \text{or} \qquad a = 1;$$

and making $x = 0$, we have

$$\frac{du}{dx} = B.$$

The second differential coefficient is

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2} = b(b-1)Cx^{b-2} + c(c-1)Dx^{c-2} + \&c.;$$

but since the second differential coefficient does not necessarily become 0, when $x = 0$, we have

$$b - 2 = 0, \qquad \text{or} \qquad b = 2:$$

hence, by making $x = 0$, we have

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2} = 2C, \qquad \text{or} \qquad C = \frac{d^2u}{dx^2}\frac{1}{2}.$$

We may prove in a similar manner that

$$c = 3 \quad \text{and} \quad D = \frac{d^3u}{dx^3}\frac{1}{1.2.3}, \quad \&c.$$

If then we designate by U what the function becomes when we make $x = 0$, and by U', U'', U''', &c., what the successive differential coefficients become under the same supposition, we shall have

$$F(x) = U + U'x + U''\frac{x^2}{1.2} + U'''\frac{x^3}{1.2.3} + \&c.$$

49. The theorem of Maclaurin may be deduced immediately from that of Taylor.

In the development

$$u' = u + \frac{du}{dx}y + \frac{d^2u}{dx^2}\frac{y^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3u}{dx^3}\frac{y^3}{1.2.3} + \&c.,$$

the coefficients u, $\frac{du}{dx}$, $\frac{d^2u}{dx^2}$, &c.,

are functions of x, and also dependent on the constants which enter into $F(x+y)$.

If we make $x = 0$, the $F(x+y)$ becomes $F(y)$, and each of the differential coefficients being thus made independent of x, will depend only on the constants which enter into $F(x+y)$, and which also enter into $F(y)$. Hence, if we designate by

$$U,\ U',\ U'',\ U''',\ U'''',\ \&c.,$$

the values which the coefficients assume under this hypothesis, we shall have

$$F(y)=U+U'y+U''\frac{y^2}{1.2}+U'''\frac{y^3}{1.2.3}+U''''\frac{y^4}{1.2.3.4}+\&c.$$

50. If we take a function of the form

$$u=(a+x)^n,$$

we shall have

$$\frac{du}{dx}=n(a+x)^{n-1},$$

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2}=n(n-1)(a+x)^{n-2},$$

$$\&c.=\&c.$$

which become, when we make $x=0$,

$$U=a^n,\quad U'=na^{n-1},\quad U''=n(n-1)a^{n-2},\quad \&c.;$$

hence,

$$(a+x)^n=a^n+na^{n-1}x+\frac{n(n-1)}{1.2}x^{n-2}x^2+\&c.$$

51. *Remark* 1. The theorem of Maclaurin has been demonstrated under the supposition that the $F(x)$ reduces to a finite quantity when we make $x=0$. The case, therefore, is excluded in which $x=0$ renders the function infinite. Thus, if we have

$$u=\cos x,\quad u=\operatorname{cosec} x,\quad \text{or}\quad u=\log x,$$

and make $x=0$, we find $u=\infty$; hence, neither of these functions can be developed by the theorem of Maclaurin.

Remark 2. We have already seen (Art. 45.), that the theorem of Taylor does not apply to those cases in which the form of the function is changed by attributing a *particular* value to one of the variables: the theorem therefore *fails* for *particular* values, but is true for all others, and hence, the *general* development never fails.

In the theorem of Maclaurin the failure arises from the *form* of the function: hence, it is the *general* development which fails, and with it, all the particular cases.

EXAMPLES.

1. Develop into a series the function

$$u = \sqrt{a^2 + x^2} = a\left(1 + \frac{x^2}{a^2}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

2. Develop into a series the function

$$u = \sqrt[3]{(a^2 - x^2)^2} = a^{\frac{4}{3}}\left(1 - \frac{x^2}{a^2}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}}.$$

3. Develop into a series the function

$$u = \frac{1}{a + x} = a^{-1}\left(1 + \frac{x}{a}\right)^{-1}.$$

4. Develop into a series the function

$$u = \frac{1}{\sqrt[4]{a^4 + x^4}} = a^{-1}\left(1 + \frac{x^4}{a^4}\right)^{-\frac{1}{4}}.$$

CHAPTER III.

Of Transcendental Functions.

52. If we have an equation of the form

$$u = a^x,$$

in which a is constant, it is plain that u will be a function of x; and if a be made the base of a system of logarithms, x will be the logarithm of the number u (Alg. Art, 240). When the variable and function are thus related to each other, u is said to be an *exponential or logarithmic function of* x.

53. The functions expressed by the equations

$$u = \sin x, \quad u = \cos x, \quad u = \text{tang } x, \quad u = \cot x, \quad \&c.,$$

are called *circular functions.*

The logarithmic and circular functions are generally called *transcendental functions*, because the relation between the function and variable is not determined by the ordinary operations of Algebra.

Differentiation of Logarithmic Functions.

54. Let us resume the function

$$u = a^x.$$

If we give to x an increment h, we have

$$u' = a^{x+h},$$

and $$u' - u = a^{x+h} - a^x = a^x(a^h - 1).$$

In order to develop a^h, let us make $a = 1 + b$, we shall then have

$$a^h = (1+b)^h = 1 + \frac{h}{1}b + \frac{h(h-1)}{1.2}b^2 + \frac{h(h-1)(h-2)}{1.2.3}b^3 + \text{\&c;}$$

hence,

$$a^h - 1 = \frac{h}{1}b + \frac{h(h-1)}{1.2}b^2 + \frac{h(h-1)(h-2)}{1.2.3}b^3 + \text{\&c.},$$

$$= h\left(\frac{b}{1} + \frac{(h-1)}{1}\frac{b^2}{2} + \frac{(h-1)(h-2)}{1.2}\frac{b^3}{3} + \text{\&c.}\right);$$

from which we see, that the coefficients of the first power of h will be

$$\left(\frac{b}{1} - \frac{b^2}{2} + \frac{b^3}{3} - \text{\&c.}\right);$$

replacing b by its value $a-1$, and passing to the limit, we obtain

$$\frac{du}{dx} = \frac{da^x}{dx} = a^x\left(\frac{a-1}{1} - \frac{(a-1)^2}{2} + \frac{(a-1)^3}{3} - \text{\&c.}\right);$$

or if we make

$$k = \frac{a-1}{1} - \frac{(a-1)^2}{2} + \frac{(a-1)^3}{3} - \text{\&c.},$$

$$\frac{da^x}{dx} = ka^x, \quad \text{or} \quad da^x = ka^x dx;$$

in which k is dependent on a.

The successive differential coefficients are readily found. For we have

$$\frac{da^x}{dx} = a^x k,$$

$$d\left(\frac{da^x}{dx}\right) = da^x k = a^x k^2 dx;$$

hence,

$$\frac{d^2a^x}{dx^2} = a^x k^2,$$

$$\frac{d^3a^x}{dx^3} = a^x k^3,$$

&c. &c.

$$\frac{d^n a^x}{dx^n} = a^x k^n.$$

55. It is now proposed to find the relation which exists between a and k. For this purpose, let us employ the formula of Maclaurin,

$$u = F(x) = U + U'\frac{x}{1} + U''\frac{x^2}{1.2} + U'''\frac{x^3}{1.2.3} + \text{ &c.}$$

If in the function

$$u = a^x,$$

and the successive differential coefficients before found, we make $x = 0$, we have

$$U = 1, \qquad U' = k, \qquad U'' = k^2, \qquad U''' = k^3, \quad \text{&c.};$$

hence,

$$a^x = 1 + \frac{kx}{1} + \frac{k^2x^2}{1.2} + \frac{k^3x^3}{1.2.3} + \text{ &c.}$$

If we now make $x = \frac{1}{k}$, we shall have

$$a^{\frac{1}{k}} = 1 + \frac{1}{1} + \frac{1}{1.2} + \frac{1}{1.2.3} + \text{ &c.};$$

designating by e the second member of the equation, and employing twelve terms of the series, we shall find

$$e = 2.7182818;$$

hence, $$a^{\frac{1}{k}} = e, \quad \text{therefore} \quad a = e^k.$$

But, 2.7182818 is the base of the Naperian system of logarithms (Alg. Art. 255); hence, *the constant quantity* k *is the Naperian logarithm of* a.

By resuming the result obtained in Art. 51,

$$da^x = a^x k\,dx,$$

we see that *the differential of a quantity obtained by raising a constant to a power denoted by a variable exponent, is equal to the quantity itself into the Naperian logarithm of the constant, into the differential of the exponent.*

56. If now we take the logarithms, in any system, of both members of the equation

$$e^k = a,$$

we shall have

$$kle = la, \quad \text{or} \quad k = \frac{la}{le},$$

whence,

$$da^x = ka^x dx = \frac{la}{le} a^x dx;$$

or by recollecting that

$$u = a^x,$$

we have

$$\frac{du}{dx} = \frac{la}{le} a^x;$$

or, if we regard x as the function, and u as the variable, we have (Art. 34),

$$\frac{dx}{du} = \frac{le}{la}\frac{1}{a^x}.$$

Let us now suppose a to be the base of a system of logarithms. We shall then have $x =$ the logarithm of u, $la = 1$, and $le =$ the modulus of the system (Alg. Art. 255); and the equation will become

$$d(lu) = le\frac{du}{u},$$

that is, *the differential of the logarithm of a quantity is equal to the modulus of the system into the differential of the quantity divided by the quantity itself.*

57. If we suppose $a = e$ the base of the Naperian system, and employ the usual characteristic l' to designate the Naperian logarithm, we shall have

$$d(l'u) = \frac{du}{u};$$

that is, *the differential of the Naperian logarithm of a quantity is equal to the differential of the quantity divided by the quantity itself.*

The last property might have been deduced from the preceding article by observing that the modulus of the Naperian system is equal to unity.

58. The theorem of Maclaurin affords an easy method of finding a logarithmic series from which a table of logarithms may be computed. If we have a function of the form,

$$u = F(x) = lx,$$

we have already seen that the development cannot be made, since $F(x)$ becomes infinite when $x=0$ (Art. 51.)

But if we make

$$u=F(x)=l(1+x),$$

the function will not become infinite when $x=0$; and hence the development may be made.

The theorem of Maclaurin gives

$$u=F(x)=U+U'\frac{x}{1}+U''\frac{x^2}{1.2}+U'''\frac{x^3}{1.2.3}+\&c.$$

If we designate the modulus of the system of the logarithms by A, we shall have

$$\frac{du}{dx}=A\frac{1}{1+x}=A(1+x)^{-1},$$

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2}=-A\frac{1}{(1+x)^2}=-A(1+x)^{-2},$$

$$\frac{d^3u}{dx^3}=2A\frac{1}{(1+x)^3}=2A(1+x)^{-3}.$$

If we now make $x=0$, we have

$$U=0,\quad U'=A,\quad U''=-A,\quad U'''=2A,\ \&c.;$$

hence,

$$l(1+x)=A\left(x-\frac{x^2}{2}+\frac{x^3}{3}-\frac{x^4}{4}+\frac{x^5}{5}-\&c.\right)$$

This series is not sufficiently converging, except in the case when x is a very small fraction. To render the series more converging, substitute $-x$ for x: we then have

$$l(1-x)=A\left(-x-\frac{x^2}{2}-\frac{x^3}{3}-\frac{x^4}{4}-\frac{x^5}{5}-\&c.\right)$$

and by subtracting the last series from the first, we obtain

$$l(1+x)-l(1-x)=l\left(\frac{1+x}{1-x}\right)=2A\left(\frac{x}{1}+\frac{x^3}{3}+\frac{x^5}{5}+\text{ \&c.}\right)$$

If we make

$$\frac{1+x}{1-x}=1+\frac{z}{n}, \quad \text{we have} \quad x=\frac{z}{2n+z},$$

and by observing that

$$l\left(1+\frac{z}{n}\right)=l\left(\frac{n+z}{n}\right)=l(n+z)-ln,$$

we have

$$l(n+z)-ln=2A\left[\frac{z}{2n+z}+\frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{z}{2n+z}\right)^3+\frac{1}{5}\left(\frac{z}{2n+z}\right)^5+\text{ \&c.,}\right]$$

from which we can find the logarithm of $n+z$ when the logarithm of n is known. This series is similar to that found in Algebra, Art. 253.

If we make $n=1$, and $z=1$, we have $l1=0$, and

$$l2=2A\left(\frac{1}{3}+\frac{1}{3.3^3}+\frac{1}{5.3^5}+\text{ \&c.}\right)$$

If we make the modulus $A=1$, the logarithm will be taken in the Naperian system, and we shall have

$$l'2=0.693147180,$$

$$2l'2=l'4=1.386294360;$$

and by making $z=4$, and $n=1$, we have

$$l'5=1.1512925465,$$

and $$2l'5=l'10=2.302585093.$$

If we now suppose the first logarithms to have been taken in the common system, of which the base is 10, we shall have, by recollecting, that the logarithms of the same number taken in two different systems are to each other as their moduli (Alg. Art. 250),

$$l10 \;:\; l'10 \;::\; A \;:\; 1,$$

or,

$$1 \;:\; 2.302585093 \;::\; A \;:\; 1;$$

whence,

$$A = \frac{1}{2.30258509} = 0.434284482.$$

Remark. To avoid the inconvenience of writing the modulus at each differentiation (Art. 56), the Naperian logarithms are generally used in the calculus, and when we wish to pass to the common system, we have merely to multiply by the modulus of the common system. We may then omit the accent, and designate the Naperian logarithm by l.

59. Let us now apply these principles in differentiating logarithmic functions.

1. Let us take the function $u = l\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{a^2+x^2}}\right)$.

Make

$$z = \frac{x}{\sqrt{a^2+x^2}},$$

and we shall have

$$du = \frac{dz}{z},$$

but

$$dz = \frac{dx\sqrt{a^2+x^2} - \frac{x^2dx}{\sqrt{a^2+x^2}}}{a^2+x^2} = \frac{a^2dx}{\left(a^2+x^2\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}};$$

whence, $$du = \frac{a^2 dx}{x(a^2+x^2)}.$$

2. Take the function $u = l\left[\frac{\sqrt{1+x}+\sqrt{1-x}}{\sqrt{1+x}-\sqrt{1-x}}\right]$;

and make $\sqrt{1+x}+\sqrt{1-x}=y$, $\sqrt{1+x}-\sqrt{1-x}=z$,

which gives

$$u = l\left(\frac{y}{z}\right) = ly - lz, \quad \text{and} \quad du = \frac{dy}{y} - \frac{dz}{z}.$$

But we have

$$dy = \frac{dx}{2\sqrt{1+x}} - \frac{dx}{2\sqrt{1-x}} = \frac{-dx}{2\sqrt{1-x^2}}\left(\sqrt{1+x}-\sqrt{1-x}\right),$$

$$= \frac{zdx}{2\sqrt{1-x^2}},$$

$$dz = \frac{dx}{2\sqrt{1+x}} + \frac{dx}{2\sqrt{1-x}} = \frac{dx}{2\sqrt{1-x^2}}\left(\sqrt{1+x}+\sqrt{1-x}\right),$$

$$= \frac{ydx}{2\sqrt{1-x^2}}.$$

Whence,

$$\frac{dy}{y} - \frac{dz}{z} = -\frac{zdx}{2y\sqrt{1-x^2}} - \frac{ydx}{2z\sqrt{1-x^2}},$$

$$= \frac{-(y^2+z^2)dx}{2yz\sqrt{1-x^2}};$$

and observing that $y^2+z^2=4$ and $yz=2x$,

we have $$du = -\frac{dx}{x\sqrt{1-x^2}}.$$

3. $u = l\left(x + \sqrt{1+x^2}\right)$, $\quad du = \dfrac{dx}{\sqrt{1+x^2}}$.

4. $u = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{-1}} l\left(x\sqrt{-1} + \sqrt{1-x^2}\right)$, $\quad du = \dfrac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$.

5. $u = l\left[\dfrac{\sqrt{1+x^2}+x}{\sqrt{1+x^2}-x}\right]^{\frac{1}{2}}$, $\quad du = \dfrac{dx}{\sqrt{1+x^2}}$.

6. $u = l\left[\dfrac{\sqrt{a+x}+\sqrt{a-x}}{\sqrt{a+x}-\sqrt{a-x}}\right]$, $\quad du = -\dfrac{a dx}{x\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}$.

60. Let us suppose that we have a function of the form

$$u = (lx)^n.$$

Make $lx = z$, and we have

$$u = z^n, \qquad du = nz^{n-1}dz,$$

and substituting for z and dz their values,

$$d(lx)^n = \frac{n(lx)^{n-1}}{x}dx.$$

61. Let us suppose that we have

$$u = l(lx).$$

Make $lx = z$, and we shall have,

$$u = lz, \qquad du = \frac{dz}{z}, \qquad dz = \frac{dx}{x};$$

hence, $\quad du = \dfrac{dx}{xlx}$.

62. The rules for the differentiation of logarithmic functions are advantageously applied in the differentiation of complicated exponential functions.

1. Let us suppose that we have a function of the form

$$u = z^y,$$

in which z and y are both variables.

If we take the logarithms of both members, we have

$$lu = ylz;$$

hence,
$$\frac{du}{u} = dy\,lz + y\frac{dz}{z};$$

or,
$$du = ulzdy + uy\frac{dz}{z},$$

or by substituting for u its value

$$du = dz^y = z^y lzdy + yz^{y-1}dz.$$

Hence, *the differential of a function which is equal to a variable root raised to a power denoted by a variable exponent, is equal to the sum of the differentials which arise, by differentiating, first under the supposition that the root remains constant, and then under the supposition that the exponent remains constant* (Arts. 55, and 32).

2. Let the function be of the form

$$u = a^{b^x}.$$

Make, $b^x = y$, and we shall then have (Art. 55),

$$u = a^y, \qquad du = a^y lady; \quad \text{but} \quad dy = b^x lbdx,$$

hence,
$$du = a^{b^x} b^x lalbdx.$$

3. Let us take as a last example

$$u = z^{t^s},$$

in which z, t, and s, are variables.

Make, $t^s = y$, we shall then have

$$u = z^y, \qquad du = z^y l z dy + y z^{y-1} dz.$$

But $$dy = t^s l t ds + s t^{s-1} dt;$$

hence, $$du = z^{t^s} l z (t^s l t ds + s t^{s-1} dt) + t^s z^{t^s - 1} dz,$$

$$du = z^{t^s} t^s \left(l t l z ds + \frac{s l z dt}{t} + \frac{dz}{z} \right).$$

Differentiation of Circular Functions.

63. Let us first find the differential of the sine of an arc. For this purpose we will assume the formulas (Trig. Art. XIX),

$$\sin(a+b) = \frac{\sin a \cos b + \sin b \cos a}{R},$$

$$\sin(a-b) = \frac{\sin a \cos b - \sin b \cos a}{R}.$$

If we subtract the second equation from the first,

$$\sin(a+b) - \sin(a-b) = \frac{2 \sin b \cos a}{R}.$$

and if we make $a + b = x + h$, and $a - b = x$, we shall have

$$\sin(x+h) - \sin x = \frac{2 \sin \frac{1}{2} h \cos\left(x + \frac{1}{2} h\right)}{R}.$$

and dividing both members by h,

$$\frac{\sin(x+h)-\sin x}{h}=\frac{2\sin\frac{1}{2}h\cos\left(x+\frac{1}{2}h\right)}{hR},$$

$$=\frac{\sin\frac{1}{2}h}{\frac{1}{2}h}\cdot\frac{\cos\left(x+\frac{1}{2}h\right)}{R}.$$

If we now pass to the limit, the second factor of the second member of the equation will become $\frac{\cos x}{R}$.

In relation to the first factor $\frac{\sin\frac{1}{2}h}{\frac{1}{2}h}$ its limit will be unity.

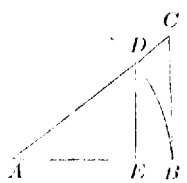
For, $\quad \text{tang}\,a=\frac{R\sin a}{\cos a}$, whence $\quad \frac{\sin a}{\text{tang}\,a}=\frac{\cos a}{R}$;

Now, since an arc is greater than its sine and less than its tangent*

$$\frac{\sin a}{a}<1, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\sin a}{a}>\frac{\sin a}{\text{tang}\,a}:$$

---

* The arc DB is greater than a straight line drawn from D to B, and consequently greater than the sine DE drawn perpendicular to AB.



The area of the sector ABD is equal to $\frac{1}{2}AB\times BD$, and the area of the triangle ABC is equal to $\frac{1}{2}AB\times BC$. But the sector is less than the triangle being contained within it: hence,

$$\frac{1}{2}AB\times BD<\frac{1}{2}AB\times BC,$$

consequently,

$$BD<BC.$$

hence, the ratio of the sine divided by the arc is nearer unity than that of the sine divided by the tangent. But when we pass to the limit, by making the arc equal to 0, the sine divided by the tangent being equal to the cosine divided by the radius, is equal to unity: hence *the limit of the ratio of the sine and arc, is unity.*

When therefore we pass to the limit by making $h = 0$, we find

$$\frac{d\sin x}{dx} = \frac{\cos x}{R};$$

hence,
$$d\sin x = \frac{\cos x\, dx}{R}.$$

64. Having found the differential of the sine, the differentials of the other functions of the arc are readily deduced from it.

$$\cos x = \sin(90° - x), \qquad d\cos x = d\sin(90° - x),$$

and by the last article,

$$d\sin(90° - x) = \frac{1}{R}\cos(90° - x)\, d(90° - x),$$

$$= -\frac{1}{R}\cos(90° - x)dx;$$

hence,
$$d\cos x = -\frac{\sin x\, dx}{R};$$

the differential of the cosine in terms of the arc being negative, as it should be, since the cosine and arc are decreasing functions of each other (Art. 31.)

65. Since the versed sine of an arc is equal to radius minus the cosine, we have

$$d \text{ ver-sin } x = d(R - \cos x) = \frac{\sin x dx}{R}.$$

66. Since $\text{tang } x = \dfrac{R \sin x}{\cos x}$, we have (Art. 30),

$$d \text{ tang } x = \frac{R \cos x d \sin x - R \sin x d \cos x}{\cos^2 x},$$

$$= \frac{(\cos^2 x + \sin^2 x) dx}{\cos^2 x};$$

but $\cos^2 x + \sin^2 x = R^2$:

hence, $$d \text{ tang } x = \frac{R^2 dx}{\cos^2 x}.$$

67. Since $\cot x = \dfrac{R^2}{\text{tang } x}$, we have

$$d \cot x = -\frac{R^2 d \text{ tang } x}{\text{tang}^2 x} = -\frac{R^4 dx}{\text{tang}^2 x \cos^2 x};$$

but, $$\text{tang}^2 x = \frac{R^2 \sin^2 x}{\cos^2 x};$$

hence, $$d \cot x = -\frac{R^2 dx}{\sin^2 x};$$

which is negative, as it should be, since the cotangent is a decreasing function of the arc.

68. Since $\sec x = \frac{R^2}{\cos x}$, we have

$$d \sec x = -\frac{R^2 d \cos x}{\cos^2 x} = \frac{R \sin x dx}{\cos^2 x};$$

but, $\frac{R \sin x}{\cos x} = \tang x$, and $\frac{R^2}{\cos x} = \sec x$;

hence, $$d \sec x = \frac{\sec x \tang x dx}{R^2}.$$

69. Since $\cosec x = \frac{R^2}{\sin x}$, we have

$$d \cosec x = -\frac{R^2 d \sin x}{\sin^2 x} = -\frac{R \cos x dx}{\sin^2 x};$$

hence, $$d \cosec x = -\frac{\cosec x \cot x dx}{R^2}.$$

70. If we make $R = 1$, Arts. 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, will give,

$$d \sin x = \cos x dx \qquad (1),$$

$$d \cos x = -\sin x dx \qquad (2),$$

$$d \ver \sin x = \sin x dx \qquad (3),$$

$$d \tang x = \frac{dx}{\cos x} \qquad (4),$$

$$d \cot x = -\frac{dx}{\sin x} \qquad (5).$$

The differential values of the secant and cosecant are omitted, being of little practical use.

71. In treating the circular functions, it is found to be most convenient to regard the arc as the function, and the

sine, cosine, versed-sine, tangent, or cotangent, as the variable. If we designate the variable by u, we shall have in (Art. 63) $\sin x = u$, and

$$dx = \frac{R\,du}{\cos x} = \frac{R\,du}{\sqrt{R^2 - u^2}}.$$

If we make $\cos x = u$, we have (Art. 64),

$$dx = -\frac{R\,du}{\sin x} = -\frac{R\,du}{\sqrt{1 - u^2}}.$$

If we make $\text{ver-sin}\, x = u$, we have (Art. 65),

$$dx = \frac{R\,du}{\sin x}.$$

But, $\sin x = \sqrt{R^2 - \cos^2 x}$, and $\cos x = R - u$,

therefore, $\cos^2 x = R^2 - 2Ru + u^2$,

hence, $\sin x = \sqrt{2Ru - u^2}$,

and consequently, $dx = \dfrac{R\,du}{\sqrt{2Ru - u^2}}$;

If we make $\text{tang}\, x = u$, we have (Art. 66)

$$dx = \frac{\cos^2 x\, du}{R^2};$$

but $\dfrac{\cos x}{R} = \dfrac{R}{\sec x}$, hence $\dfrac{\cos^2 x}{R^2} = \dfrac{R^2}{\sec^2 x} = \dfrac{R^2}{R^2 + \text{tang}^2 x}$,

hence, $dx = \dfrac{R^2\,du}{R^2 + u^2}$.

Now, if we make $R=1$, the four last formulas become

$$dx=\frac{du}{\sqrt{1-u^2}}, \qquad dx=-\frac{du}{\sqrt{1-u^2}},$$

$$dx=\frac{du}{\sqrt{2u-u^2}}, \qquad dx=\frac{du}{1+u^2};$$

and these formulas being of frequent use, should be carefully committed to memory.

72. The following notation has recently been introduced into the differential calculus, and it enables us to designate an arc by means of its functions.

$\sin^{-1}u=$ the arc of which u is the sine,

$\cos^{-1}u=$ the arc of which u is the cosine,

$\text{tang}^{-1}u=$ the arc of which u is the tangent,

&c. &c. &c.

If, for example, we have

$$x=\sin^{-1}u, \quad \text{then,} \quad dx=\frac{du}{\sqrt{1-u^2}}.$$

73. We shall now add a few examples.

1. Let us take a function of the form

$$x=\cos x^{\sin x}.$$

Make $\cos x=z$, and $\sin x=y$;

then, $u=z^y$, and (Art. 62);

$$du=z^y\,lz\,dy+yz^{y-1}dz:$$

also, $dz = -\sin x\,dx$, and $dy = \cos x\,dx$:

hence, $$du = z^y\left(lz\,dy + \frac{y}{z}\,dz\right),$$

$$= \cos x^{\sin x}\left(l\cos x\cos x - \frac{\sin^2 x}{\cos x}\right)dx.$$

2. Differentiate the function

$$x = \sin^{-1} mu, \qquad dx = \frac{m\,du}{\sqrt{1-m^2u^2}}.$$

3. Differentiate the function

$$x = \cos^{-1}\left(u\sqrt{1-u^2}\right)$$

$$dx = \frac{(-1+2u^2)du}{\sqrt{(1-u^2+u^4)(1-u^2)}}.$$

4. Differentiate the function

$$x = \tan^{-1}\frac{u}{2}, \qquad dx = \frac{2\,du}{4+u^2}.$$

5. Differentiate the function

$$x = \sin^{-1}\left(2u\sqrt{1-u^2}\right), \qquad dx = \frac{2\,du}{\sqrt{1-u^2}}.$$

6. Differentiate the function

$$u = \tan^{-1}\frac{x}{y}, \qquad du = \frac{y\,dx - x\,dy}{y^2+x^2}.$$

74. We are enabled by means of Maclaurin's theorem and the differentials of the circular functions, to find the

value of the principal functions of an arc in terms of the arc itself.

Let $u = F(x) = \sin x$: then,

$$\frac{du}{dx} = \cos x, \qquad \frac{d^2u}{dx^2} = -\sin x, \qquad \frac{d^3u}{dx^3} = -\cos x,$$

$$\frac{d^4u}{dx^4} = \sin x, \qquad \frac{d^5u}{dx^5} = +\cos x.$$

If we now render the differential coefficients independent of x, by making $x = 0$, we have (Art. 49),

$$U = 0, \qquad U' = 1, \qquad U'' = 0, \qquad U''' = -1,$$

$$U'''' = 0, \qquad U''''' = +1:$$

hence, $$\sin x = \frac{x}{1} - \frac{x^3}{1.2.3} + \frac{x^5}{1.2.3.4.5} - \&c.$$

75. To develop the cosine in terms of the arc, make

$$u = F(x) = \cos x; \text{ then,}$$

$$\frac{du}{dx} = -\sin x, \qquad \frac{d^2u}{dx^2} = -\cos x, \qquad \frac{d^3u}{dx^3} = \sin x,$$

$$\frac{d^4u}{dx^4} = \cos x, \qquad \frac{d^5u}{dx^5} = -\sin x,$$

and rendering the coefficients independent of x, we have

$$U = 1, \qquad U' = 0, \qquad U'' = -1, \qquad U''' = 0,$$

$$U'''' = 1, \qquad U''''' = 0:$$

hence, $$\cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{1.2} + \frac{x^4}{1.2.3.4} - \&c.$$

The last two formulas are very convenient in calculating the trigonometrical tables, and when the arc is small the series will converge rapidly. Having found the sine and cosine, the other functions of the arc may readily be calculated from them.

76. In the two last series we have found the values of the functions, sine and cosine, in terms of the arc. We may, if we please, find the value of the arc in terms of any of its functions.

77. The differential coefficient of the arc in terms of its sine, is (Art. 71),

$$\frac{dx}{du} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-u^2}} = (1-u^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}};$$

developing by the binomial theorem, we find

$$\frac{dx}{du} = 1 + \frac{1}{2}u^2 + \frac{1.3}{2.4}u^4 + \frac{1.3.5}{2.4.6}u^6 + \&c.$$

In passing from the function to the differential coefficient, the exponent of the variable in each term which contains it, is diminished by unity; and hence, the series which expresses the value of x in terms of u, will contain the uneven powers of u, or will be of the form

$$x = Au + Bu^3 + Cu^5 + Du^7 + \&c.;$$

and the differential coefficient is

$$\frac{dx}{du} = A + 3Bu^2 + 5Cu^4 + 7Du^6 + \&c.$$

But since the differential coefficients are equal to each other, we find, by comparing the series,

$$A=1, \quad B=\frac{1}{2.3}, \qquad C=\frac{1.3}{2.4.5}, \qquad D=\frac{1.3.5}{2.4.6.7};$$

hence,

$$x=\sin^{-1}u=\frac{u}{1}+\frac{1}{2}\frac{u^3}{3}+\frac{1.3u^5}{2.4.5}+\frac{1.3.5}{2.4.6.7}u^7+\text{ \&c.}$$

If we take the arc of 30°, of which the sine is $\frac{1}{2}$ (Trig. Art. XV), we shall have

$$\text{arc } 30^\circ=\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{2.3.2^3}+\frac{1.3}{2.4.5.2^5}+\frac{1.3.5}{2.4.6.7.2^7}+\text{ \&c.};$$

and by multiplying both members of the equation by 6, we obtain the length of the semi-circumference to the radius unity.

78. To express the arc in terms of its tangent, we have (Art. 71),

$$\frac{dx}{du}=\frac{1}{1+u^2}=(1+u^2)^{-1},$$

which gives

$$\frac{dx}{du}=1-u^2+u^4-u^6+\text{ \&c.};$$

hence the function x must be of the form

$$x=Au+Bu^3+Cu^5+Du^7,$$

and consequently

$$\frac{dx}{du}=A+3Bu^2+5Cu^4+7Du^6;$$

and by comparing the series, and substituting for A, B, C, &c., their values, we find

$$x = \text{tang}^{-1} u = \frac{u}{1} - \frac{u^3}{3} + \frac{u^5}{5} - \frac{u^7}{7} + \text{\&c.}$$

If we make $x = 45°$, u will be equal to 1; hence,

$$\text{arc } 45° = 1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{7} + \text{\&c.}$$

But this series is not sufficiently convergent to be used for computing the value of the arc. To find the value of the arc in a more converging series, we employ the following property of two arcs, viz.:

Four times the arc whose tangent is $\frac{1}{5}$, *exceeds the arc of* 45° *by the arc whose tangent is* $\frac{1}{239}$*.

---

* Let a represent the arc whose tangent is $\frac{1}{5}$. Then (Trig. Art. XXVI),

$$\text{tang } 2a = \frac{2 \text{ tang } a}{1 - \text{tang}^2 a} = \frac{5}{12},$$

$$\text{tang } 4a = \frac{2 \text{ tang } 2a}{1 - \text{tang}^2 2a} = \frac{120}{119}.$$

The last number being greater than unity, shows that the arc $4a$ exceeds 45°. Making

$$4a = A, \qquad 45° = B,$$

the difference, $4a - 45° = A - B = b$, will have for its tangent

$$\text{tang } b = \text{tang } (A - B) = \frac{\text{tang } A - \text{tang } B}{1 + \text{tang } A \text{ tang } B} = \frac{1}{239};$$

hence, *four times the arc whose tangent is* $\frac{1}{5}$, *exceeds the arc of* 45° *by an arc whose tangent is* $\frac{1}{239}$.

But $$\text{tang}^{-1}\frac{1}{5} = \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{3.5^3} + \frac{1}{5.5^5} - \frac{1}{7.7^7} + \text{\&c.},$$

$$\text{tang}^{-1}\frac{1}{239} = \frac{1}{239} - \frac{1}{3(239)^3} + \frac{1}{5(239)^5} - \frac{1}{7(239)^7} + \text{\&c.};$$

hence,

$$\text{arc } 45^\circ = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} 4\left(\frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{3.5^3} + \frac{1}{5.5^5} - \frac{1}{7.7^7} + \right) \\ -\left(\frac{1}{239} - \frac{1}{3(239)^3} + \frac{1}{5(239)^5} - \frac{1}{7(239)^7} + \right) \end{array} \right\}$$

Multiplying by 4, we find the semi-circumference

$$= 3.141592653.$$

When you go back
to Accomack
the people surprised to see
and flock around
from all the town
"Is this friend Williams?"
Lyndon Wright

CHAPTER IV.

Development of any Function of two Variables —Differential of a Function of any number of Variables—Implicit Functions—Differential Equations of Curves—Of Vanishing Fractions.

79. We have explained in Taylor's theorem the method of developing into a series any function of the sum or difference of two variables.

We now propose to give a general theorem of which that is a particular case, viz :

To develop into a series any function of two or more variables, and find the differential of the function.

80. Before making the development it will be necessary to explain a notation which has not yet been used.

If we have a function of two variables, as

$$u = F(x,y),$$

we may suppose one to remain constant and differentiate the function with respect to the other.

Thus, if we suppose y to remain constant, and x to vary, the differential coefficient will be

$$\frac{du}{dx} = F'(x,y); \qquad (1),$$

and if we suppose x to remain constant and y to vary, the differential coefficient will be

$$\frac{du}{dy} = F''(x,y). \qquad (2).$$

The differential coefficients which are obtained under these suppositions, are called *partial differential coefficients*. The first is the partial differential coefficient with respect to x, and the second with respect to y.

81. If we multiply both members of equation (1) by dx, and both members of equation (2) by dy, we obtain

$$\frac{du}{dx}dx = F'(x,y)dx, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{du}{dy}dy = F''(x,y)dy.$$

The expressions,

$$\frac{du}{dx}dx, \qquad \frac{du}{dy}dy,$$

are called *partial differentials*; the first a partial differential with respect to x, and the second a partial differential with respect to y: hence,

A partial differential coefficient is the differential coefficient of a function of two or more variables, under the supposition that only one of them has changed its value: and,

A partial differential is the differential of a function of two or more variables, under the supposition that only one of them has changed its value.

82. If we differentiate equation (1) under the supposition that x remains constant and y varies, we shall have

$$\frac{d\left(\frac{du}{dx}\right)}{dy} = F''(x,y),$$

and since x and dx are constant

$$d\left(\frac{du}{dx}\right) = \frac{d(du)}{dx},$$

which we designate by

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2};$$

hence,

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx\,dy} = F''(x,y).$$

The first member of this equation expresses that the function u has been differentiated twice, once with respect to x, and once with respect to y.

If we differentiate again, regarding x as the variable, we obtain

$$\frac{d^3u}{dx^2dy} = F'''(x,y),$$

which expresses that the function has been differentiated twice with respect to x and once with respect to y. And generally

$$\frac{d^{n+m}u}{dx^n dy^m},$$

indicates that the function u has been differentiated $n+m$ times, n times with respect to x, and m times with respect to y.

83. Resuming the function

$$u = F(x,y),$$

if we suppose y to remain constant, and give to x an arbitrary increment h, we shall have from the theorem of Taylor,

$$F(x+h,y) = u + \frac{du}{dx}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2u}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3u}{dx^3}\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \&c.,$$

in which, $u, \frac{du}{dx}, \frac{d^2u}{dx^2}, \frac{d^3u}{dx^3}$,

are functions of x and y, and dependent on the constants which enter the $F(x, y)$.

If we now attribute to y an increment k, the function u, which depends on y, will become

$$u + \frac{du}{dy}k + \frac{d^2u}{dy^2}\frac{k^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3u}{dy^3}\frac{k^3}{1.2.3} + \&c.;$$

and the function $\frac{du}{dx}$ will become

$$\frac{du}{dx} + \frac{d^2u}{dxdy}\frac{k}{1} + \frac{d^3u}{dxdy^2}\frac{k^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^4u}{dxdy^3}\frac{k^3}{1.2.3} + \&c.,$$

and the function $\frac{d^2u}{dx^2}$, will become

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2} + \frac{d^3u}{dx^2dy}\frac{k}{1} + \frac{d^4u}{dx^2dy^2}\frac{k^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^5u}{dx^2dy^3}\frac{k^3}{1.2.3} + \&c.,$$

and the function $\frac{d^3u}{dx^3}$, will become

$$\frac{d^3u}{dx^3} + \frac{d^4u}{dx^3dy}\frac{k}{1} + \frac{d^5u}{dx^3dy^2}\frac{k^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^6u}{dx^3dy^3}\frac{k^3}{1.2.3} + \&c.$$

&c. &c. &c. &c.

Substituting these values in the development of

$$F(x + h, y),$$

and arranging the terms, we have

$$F(x+h, y+k) = u + \frac{du}{dy}\frac{k}{1} + \frac{d^2u}{dy^2}\frac{k^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3u}{dy^3}\frac{k^3}{1.2.3} + \text{ &c.,}$$

$$+ \frac{du}{dx}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2u}{dx\,dy}\frac{hk}{1.1} + \frac{d^3u}{dx\,dy^2}\frac{hk^2}{1.2} + \text{ &c.,}$$

$$+ \frac{d^2u}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3u}{dx^2\,dy}\frac{h^2k}{1.2} + \text{ &c.,}$$

$$+ \frac{d^3u}{dx^3}\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \text{ &c.;}$$

which is the general development of a function of two variables, in terms of the increments and differential coefficients.

84. If we now transpose $u = F(x, y)$ into the first member, and pass to the limit, we find

$$d[F(x, y)] = du = \frac{du}{dx}dx + \frac{du}{dy}dy.$$

The differential of $F(x, y) = du$, which is obtained under the supposition that *both* the variables have changed their values, is called the *total differential* of the function.

85. If we have a function of three variables, as

$$u = F(x, y, z),$$

and suppose one of them, as z, to remain constant, and increments h and k to be attributed to the other two, the development of $F(x + h, y + k, z)$ will be of the same form as the development of $F(x + h, y + k)$; but u and all the differential coefficients will be functions of z.

If then an increment l be attributed to z, there will be four terms of the development of the form

$$u, \quad \frac{du}{dx}h, \quad \frac{du}{dy}k, \quad \frac{du}{dz}l.$$

If u were a function of four variables, as

$$u = F(x, y, z, s),$$

there would be five terms of the form

$$u, \quad \frac{du}{dx}h, \quad \frac{du}{dy}k, \quad \frac{du}{dz}l, \quad \frac{du}{ds}m;$$

and a new variable introduced into the function, would introduce a term containing the first power of its increment into the development.

If we transpose u into the first member, and pass to the limit, we shall have

$$d[F(x,y,z)] = \frac{du}{dx}dx + \frac{du}{dy}dy + \frac{du}{dz}dz,$$

and

$$d[F(x,y,z,s)] = \frac{du}{dx}dx + \frac{du}{dy}dy + \frac{du}{dz}dz + \frac{du}{ds}ds,$$

from which we may conclude that, *the total differential of a function of any number of variables is equal to the sum of the partial differentials.*

86. The rule demonstrated in the last article is alone sufficient for the differentiation of every algebraic function.

1. Let $u = x^2 + y^3 - z$; then

$$\frac{du}{dx}dx = 2x\,dx, \quad \text{1st partial differential;}$$

$$\frac{du}{dy}dy = 3y^2dy, \quad \text{2d partial differential;}$$

$$\frac{du}{dz}dz = -dz, \quad \text{3d} \quad \text{“} \quad \text{“}$$

hence, $du = 2x\,dx + 3y^2dy - dz.$

2. Let $u = xy$; then,

$$\frac{du}{dx}dx = y\,dx,$$

$$\frac{du}{dy}dy = x\,dy:$$

hence, $du = y\,dx + x\,dy.$

3. Let $u = x^m y^n$; then,

$$\frac{du}{dx}dx = mx^{m-1}y^n dx,$$

$$\frac{du}{dy}dy = ny^{n-1}x^m dy: \quad \text{hence,}$$

$$du = mx^{m-1}y^n dx + ny^{n-1}x^m dy = x^{m-1}y^{n-1}(mydx + nxdy).$$

4. Let $u = \frac{x}{y}$; then,

$$\frac{du}{dx}dx = \frac{dx}{y},$$

$$\frac{du}{dy}dy = -\frac{xdy}{y^2}$$

hence, $du = \frac{y\,dx - x\,dy}{y^2}.$

5. Let $u = \dfrac{ay}{\sqrt{x^2+y^2}} = ay(x^2+y^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$; then,

$$\frac{du}{dx}dx = -\frac{ayx\,dx}{(x^2+y^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}},$$

$$\frac{du}{dy}dy = \frac{a\,dy}{(x^2+y^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} - \frac{ay^2\,dy}{(x^2+y^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}};$$

hence, $$du = -\frac{ayx\,dx - ax^2\,dy}{(x^2+y^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}.$$

6. Let $u = xyzt$; then,

$$du = yzt\,dx + xzt\,dy + xyt\,dz + xyz\,dt.$$

7. Let $u = z^v$; then,

$$\frac{du}{dy}dy = z^v lz\,dy \qquad \text{(Art. 55)},$$

$$\frac{du}{dx}dx = y\,z^{y-1}dz \qquad \text{(Art. 32)}:$$

hence, $$du = z^v lz\,dy + y\,z^{y-1}dz.$$

Remark. In chapter II, the functions were supposed to depend on a common variable, and the differentials were obtained under this supposition. We now see that the differentials are obtained in the same manner, when the functions are independent of each other, and unconnected with a common variable.

87. We have seen (Art. 39), that a function of a single variable has but one differential coefficient of the first order, one of the second, one of the third, &c.; while a

function of two variables has two differential coefficients of the first order, a function of three variables, three; a function of four variables, four; &c.

It is now proposed to find the successive differentials of a function of two variables, and also the successive differential coefficients.

We have already found

$$du = \frac{du}{dx}dx + \frac{du}{dy}dy.$$

Since $\frac{du}{dx}$ and $\frac{du}{dy}$ are functions of x and y, the differentials $\frac{du}{dx}dx$, $\frac{du}{dy}dy$, must each be differentiated with respect to both of the variables; dx and dy being supposed constant: hence,

$$d\left(\frac{du}{dx}dx\right) = \frac{d^2u}{dx^2}dx^2 + \frac{d^2u}{dx\,dy}dx\,dy,$$

$$d\left(\frac{du}{dy}dy\right) = \frac{d^2u}{dy^2}dy^2 + \frac{d^2u}{dy\,dx}dy\,dx;$$

and since the second differential of the function is but the differential of the first differential, we have

$$d^2u = \frac{d^2u}{dx^2}dx^2 + 2\,\frac{d^2u}{dx\,dy}dx\,dy + \frac{d^2u}{dy^2}dy^2.$$

If we differentiate again, we have

$$d\left(\frac{d^2u}{dx^2}dx^2\right) = \frac{d^3u}{dx^3}dx^3 + \frac{d^3u}{dx^2}\frac{dx^2dy}{dy},$$

$$d\left(2\,\frac{d^2u}{dx\,dy}dx\,dy\right) = 2\,\frac{d^3u}{dx^2dy}dx^2dy + 2\frac{d^3u}{dx\,dy^2}dx\,dy^2,$$

$$d\left(\frac{d^2u}{dy^2}dy^2\right) = \frac{d^3u}{dy^2dx}dy^2dx + \frac{d^3u}{dy^3}dy^3;$$

and consequently,

$$d^3u = \frac{d^3u}{dx^3}dx^3 + 3\frac{d^3u}{dx^2dy}dx^2dy + 3\frac{d^3u}{dxdy^2}dxdy^2 + \frac{d^3u}{dy^3}dy^3.$$

It is very easy to find the subsequent differentials, by observing the analogy between the partial differentials and the terms of the development of a binomial.

We also see that, *a function of two variables has two partial differential coefficients of the first order, three of the second, four of the third*, &c.

88. There are several important results which may be deduced from the general development of the function of two variables (Art. 83).

1st. If we make $x = 0$, and $y = 0$, u and each of the differential coefficients will become constant, and we shall have

$$F(h,k) = u + \frac{1}{1}\left(\frac{du}{dx}h + \frac{du}{dy}k\right)$$

$$+ \frac{1}{1.2}\left(\frac{d^2u}{dx^2}h^2 + 2\frac{d^2u}{dxdy}hk + \frac{d^2u}{dy^2}h^2\right)$$

$$+ \text{ \&c.},$$

which is the development of any function of two variables in terms of their ascending powers, and coefficients which are dependent on the constants that enter the primitive function.

2d. If, in the general development, we make $y = 0$, and $k = 0$, we shall have

$$F(x+h) = u + \frac{du}{dx}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2u}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3u}{dx^3}\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \&c.,$$

which is the theorem of Taylor.

3d. If we make $y = 0$, $k = 0$, and $x = 0$, we have

$$F(h) = u + \frac{du}{dx}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2u}{dx}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3u}{dy^3}\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \&c.,$$

which is the theorem of Maclaurin.

Implicit Functions.

89. When the relation between a function and its variable is expressed by an equation of the form

$$y = F(x)$$

in which y is entirely disengaged from x, y has been called an *explicit*, or *expressed* function of x (Art. 5). When y and x are connected together by an equation of the form

$$F(x,y) = 0,$$

y has been called an *implicit*, or *implied* function of x (Art. 5.)

It is plain, that in every equation of the form

$$F(x,y) = 0,$$

y must be a function of x, and x of y. For, if the equation were resolved with respect to either of them, the value found would be expressed in terms of the other variable and constant quantities.

90. If in the equation

$$u = F(x, y) = 0,$$

we suppose the variables x and y to change their values *in succession*, any change either in x or y, will produce a change in u: hence, u is a function of x and y when they vary in succession. The value, however, which u assumes, when x or y varies, will reduce to 0 when such a value be attributed to the other variable as will satisfy the equation

$$F(x, y) = 0.$$

Now the partial differential

$$\frac{du}{dx}dx.$$

represents the limit of the change which takes place in the function u under the supposition that x varies (Art. 81); and the partial differential

$$\frac{du}{dy}dy.$$

is the limit of the change which takes place in the function u under the supposition that y varies. But the change which takes place in u when x and y both vary is 0:

hence,
$$\frac{du}{dx}dx + \frac{du}{dy}dy = 0.$$

91. In discussing the equation

$$F(x, y) = 0,$$

it is often necessary to find the differential coefficients of one of the variables regarded as a function of the other, and this may be done without resolving the equation. For, from the last article,

$$\frac{du}{dx}dx + \frac{du}{dy}dy = 0;$$

or,

$$\frac{du}{dx} + \frac{du}{dy}\frac{dy}{dx} = 0:$$

hence,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{\frac{du}{dy}}.$$

Hence, *the differential coefficient of* y *regarded as a function of* x, *is equal to the ratio of the partial differential coefficients of* u *regarded as a function of* x, *and* u *regarded as a function of* y, *taken with a contrary sign.*

Let us take, as an example, the equation of the circle

$$F(x,y) = x^2 + y^2 - R^2 = u = 0;$$

then,

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 2x, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{du}{dy} = 2y:$$

hence,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{x}{y}.$$

Although the differential coefficient of the first order is generally expressed in terms of x and y, yet y may be eliminated by means of the equation $F(x,y) = 0$, and the coefficient treated as a function of x alone. In the circle, we have

$$y = \sqrt{R^2 - x^2},$$

hence, $$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{x}{\sqrt{R^2 - x^2}}.$$

92. If it be required to find the second differential coefficient, we have merely to differentiate the first differential coefficient, regarded as a function of x, and divide the result by dx. Thus, if we designate the first differential coefficient by p, the second by q, the third by r, &c., we shall have

$$\frac{dp}{dx} = q, \qquad \frac{dq}{dx} = r, \quad \&c.$$

93. To find the second differential coefficient in the circle, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{x}{y},$$

$$d\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right) = \frac{-ydx + xdy}{y^2};$$

hence, $$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{-y + x\frac{dy}{dx}}{y^2},$$

and by substituting for $\frac{dy}{dx}$ its value $-\frac{x}{y}$, we have

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -\frac{x^2 + y^2}{y^3}.$$

1. Find the first differential coefficient of y, in the equation

$$y^2 - 2mxy + x^2 - a^2 = u = 0,$$

$$\frac{du}{dx} = -2my + 2x, \qquad \frac{du}{dy} = 2y - 2mx;$$

hence, $$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\left[\frac{-2my + 2x}{2y - 2mx}\right] = \frac{my - x}{y - mx}.$$

2. Find the first differential coefficient of y in the equation

$$y^2 + 2xy + x^2 - a^2 = 0.$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -1.$$

3. Find the first and second differential coefficients of y, in the equation

$$y^3 - 3axy + x^3 = 0,$$

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 3x^2 - 3ay, \qquad \frac{du}{dy} = 3y^2 - 3ax,$$

hence, $$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{3x^2 - 3ay}{3y^2 - 3ax} = \frac{ay - x^2}{y^2 - ax}.$$

For the second differential coefficient, we have

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{(y^2 - ax)\left(a\frac{dy}{dx} - 2x\right) - (ay - x^2)\left(2y\frac{dy}{dx} - a\right)}{(y^2 - ax)^2};$$

or, by substituting for $\frac{dy}{dx}$ its value, and reducing,

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -\frac{2xy^4 - 6ax^2y^2 + 2yx^4 + 2a^3xy}{(y^2 - ax)^3},$$

$$= -\frac{2xy(y^3 - 3axy + x^3) + 2a^3xy}{(y^2 - ax)^3};$$

but from the given equation

$$y^3 - 3axy + x^3 = 0.$$

hence, $$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -\frac{2a^3xy}{(y^2 - ax)^3}.$$

Differential Equations of Curves.

94. The Differential Calculus enables us to free an equation of its constants, and to find a new equation which shall only involve the variables and their differentials.

If, for example, we take the equation of a straight line

$$y = ax + b,$$

and differentiate it, we find

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = a,$$

and by differentiating again,

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 0.$$

The last equation is entirely independent of the values of a and b, and hence, is equally applicable to every straight line which can be drawn in the plane of the co-ordinate axes. It is called, *the differential equation of lines of the first order.*

95. If we take the equation of the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 = R^2,$$

and differentiate it, we find

$$xdx + ydy = 0.$$

This equation is independent of the value of the radius R, and hence it belongs equally to every circle whose centre is at the origin of co-ordinates.

96. If the origin of co-ordinates be taken in the circumference, the equation of the circle (An. Geom. Bk. III, Prop. I, Sch. 3) is

$$y^2 = 2Rx - x^2;$$

from which we find

$$2R = \frac{y^2 + x^2}{x};$$

and by differentiating,

$$0 = \frac{x(2ydy + 2xdx) - (y^2 + x^2)dx}{x^2},$$

or by reducing

$$(x^2 - y^2)dx + 2xydy = 0,$$

which is the differential equation of the circle when the origin of co-ordinates is in the circumference.

The last equation may be found in another manner.

If we differentiate the equation of the circle,

$$y^2 = 2Rx - x^2,$$

we have, after dividing by 2

$$ydy = Rdx - xdx;$$

hence,

$$R = \frac{ydy + xdx}{dx}.$$

If this value of R be substituted in the equation of the circle, we have

$$(x^2 - y^2)dx + 2xydy = 0;$$

the same differential equation as found by the first method

97. If we take the general equation of lines of the second order (An. Geom. Bk. VI. Prop. XII, Sch. 3),

$$y^2 = mx + nx^2,$$

and differentiate it, we find

$$2ydy = mdx + 2nxdx;$$

differentiating again, regarding dx as constant, we have, after dividing by 2,

$$dy^2 + yd^2y = ndx^2.$$

Eliminating m and n from the three equations, we obtain

$$y^2dx^2 + x^2dy^2 - 2xydxdy + yx^2d^2y = 0,$$

which is the general differential equation of lines of the second order.

98. In order to free an equation of its constants, it will be necessary to differentiate it as many times as there are constants to be eliminated. For, two equations are necessary to eliminate a single constant, three to eliminate two constants, four to eliminate three constants, &c.: hence, one constant may be eliminated from the given equation and the first differential equation; two from the given equation and the first and second differential equations, &c.

99. The differential equation which is obtained after the constants are eliminated, belongs to a *species* or *order of lines*, of which the given equation represents one of the species.

Thus, the differential equation (Art. 94),

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 0,$$

belongs to an order or species of lines of which the equation

$$y = ax + b,$$

represents a single one, for given values of a and b.

The equation of a parabola is

$$y^2 = 2px,$$

and the differential equation of the species is

$$2xdy - ydx = 0, \qquad \text{or} \qquad dy^2 + yd^2y = 0.$$

100. The differential equation of a species, expresses the law by which the variable co-ordinates change their values; and this equation ought, therefore, to be independent of the constants which determine the *magnitude*, and not the *nature* of the curve.

101. The terms of an equation may be freed from their exponents, by differentiating the equation and then combining the differential and given equations.

Suppose, for example,

$$P^n = Q,$$

P and Q being any functions of x and y.

By differentiating, we obtain

$$nP^{n-1}dP = dQ:$$

by multiplying both members by P, we have

$$nP^n dP = PdQ,$$

and by substituting for P^n its value,

$$nQdP = PdQ.$$

The same result might also have been obtained by taking the logarithms of both members of the equation

$$P^n = Q.$$

For, we have

$$nlP = lQ,$$

and (Art. 57).

$$n\frac{dP}{P} = \frac{dQ}{Q};$$

hence,

$$nQdP = PdQ.$$

Of Vanishing Fractions, or those which take the form $\frac{0}{0}$.

102. It has been shown in (Alg. Art. 111), that $\frac{0}{0}$ is sometimes an undetermined symbol, and that its value may be 0, a finite quantity, or infinite.

This symbol arises from the presence of a common factor in the numerator and denominator, which, becoming 0 for a particular value of the variable, reduces the fraction to the form $\frac{0}{0}$.

If we have, for example, a fraction of the form

$$\frac{P(x-a)^m}{Q(x-a)^n},$$

in which P and Q are finite quantities, and make $x = a$, we shall have

$$\frac{P(x-a)^m}{Q(x-a)^n} = \frac{0}{0}.$$

The value of this fraction will, however, be 0, finite or infinite, according as

$$m > n, \qquad m = n, \qquad m < n,$$

for under these suppositions, respectively, it takes the form

$$\frac{P(x-a)^{m-n}}{Q}, \qquad \frac{P}{Q}, \qquad \frac{P}{Q(x-a)^{n-m}}.$$

Let the numerator of the proposed fraction be designated by X, and the denominator by X', and let us suppose an arbitrary increment h to be given to x. The numerator and denominator will then become a function of $x + h$, and we shall have from the theorem of Taylor

$$\frac{X + \frac{dX}{dx}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2X}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3X}{dx^3}\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \&c.,}{X' + \frac{dX'}{dx}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2X'}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3X'}{dx^3}\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \&c.}$$

If the value of $x = a$, reduces to 0 the differential coefficients in the numerator as far as the mth order, and those of the denominator as far as the nth order, the value of the fraction will become,

$$\frac{\frac{d^mX}{dx^m}\frac{h^m}{1.2.3.4\ldots.m} + \&c.,}{\frac{d^nX'}{dx^n}\frac{h^n}{1.2.3.4\ldots.n} + \&c.}$$

If we make $h = 0$, the value of the fraction will become 0, finite, or infinite according as

$$m > n, \qquad m = n, \qquad m < n,$$

and hence, if the value $x = a$, reduces to 0 the same number of differential coefficients in the numerator and

denominator, the value of the fraction will be finite and equal to the ratio of the first differential coefficients which do not reduce to 0.

103. Let us now illustrate this theory by examples.

1. If in the fraction

$$\frac{1 - x^n}{1 - x},$$

we make $x = 1$, we have $\frac{0}{0}$. But

$$\frac{dX}{dx} = nx^{n-1}, \qquad \frac{dX'}{dx} = 1;$$

in which, if we make $x = 1$, we have

$$\frac{dX}{dx} = n, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{dX'}{dx} = 1,$$

hence,

$$\frac{\frac{dX}{dx}}{\frac{dX'}{dx}} = n,$$

therefore, the value of the fraction when $x = 1$, is $+ n$.

2. Find the value of the fraction

$$\frac{ax^2 - 2acx + ac^2}{bx^2 - 2bcx + bc^2}, \quad \text{when } x = c,$$

$$\frac{dX}{dx} = 2ax - 2ac, \qquad \frac{dX'}{dx} = 2bx - 2bc,$$

both of which become 0, when $x = c$. Differentiating again, we have

$$\frac{d^2X}{dx^2} = 2a, \qquad \frac{d^2X'}{dx^2} = 2b;$$

hence, the true value of the fraction when $x = c$ is $\frac{a}{b}$.

3. Find the value of the fraction

$$\frac{x^3 - ax^2 - a^2x + a^3}{x^2 - a^2}, \quad \text{when } x = a.$$

Ans. 0.

4. Find the value of the fraction

$$\frac{ax - x^2}{a^4 - 2a^3x + 2ax^3 - x^4}, \quad \text{when } x = a.$$

Ans. ∞.

5. Find the value of

$$\frac{a^x - b^x}{x}, \quad \text{when } x = 0.$$

Ans. $la - lb$.

6. What is the value of the fraction

$$\frac{1 - \sin x + \cos x}{\sin x + \cos x - 1}, \quad \text{when } x = 90°.$$

Ans. 1.

7. What is the value of the fraction

$$\frac{a - x - ala + alx}{a - \sqrt{2ax - x^2}}, \quad \text{when } x = 0.$$

Ans. -1.

8. What is the value of the fraction

$$\frac{x^x - x}{1 - x + lx}, \quad \text{when } x = 1.$$

Ans. -2.

9. What is the value of the fraction

$$\frac{a^n - x^n}{la - lx}, \quad \text{when } x = a.$$

Ans. na^n.

104. It has been remarked (Art. 47), that the theorem of Taylor does not apply to the case in which a particular value attributed to x renders every coefficient either 0 or infinite. Such functions are of the form

$$\frac{(x^2-a^2)^m}{(x-a)^n},$$

in which m and n are fractional.

In functions of this form we substitute for x, $a+h$, which gives a second state of the function. We then divide the numerator and denominator by h raised to a power denoted by the smallest exponent of h, after which we make $h=0$, and find the ratio of the terms of the fraction.

When we place $a+h$ for x, we have in arranging according to the ascending powers of h,

$$\frac{F(a+h)}{F'(a+h)}=\frac{Ah^a+Bh^b+Ch^c+\&c.,}{A'h^{a'}+Bh^{b'}+Ch^{c'}+\&c.}$$

Now there are three cases, viz.: when

$$a>a', \qquad a=a', \qquad a<a'.$$

In the first case the value of the fraction will be 0; in the second, a finite quantity; and in the third it will be infinite.

105. In substituting $a+h$ for x, in the fraction

$$\frac{(x^2-a^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{(x-a)^{\frac{3}{2}}},$$

we have $$\frac{(2ah+h^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{h^{\frac{3}{2}}}=(2a+h)^{\frac{3}{2}},$$

and by making $h=0$, which renders $x=a$, the value of the fraction becomes

$$(2a)^{\frac{3}{2}}.$$

2. Required the value of the fraction

$$\frac{(x^2-3ax+2a^2)^{\frac{2}{3}}}{(x^3-a^3)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \quad \text{when} \quad x=a.$$

Substituting $a+h$ for x, we have

$$\frac{h^{\frac{2}{3}}(-a+h)^{\frac{2}{3}}}{h^{\frac{1}{2}}(3a^2+3ah+h^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}=\frac{h^{\frac{1}{6}}(-a+h)^{\frac{2}{3}}}{(3a^2+3ah+h^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}},$$

which is equal to 0, when $h=0$.

106. *Remark.* The last method of finding the value of a vanishing fraction, may frequently be employed advantageously, even when the value can be found by the theorem of Taylor.

107. There are several forms of indetermination under which a function may appear, but they can all be reduced to the form $\frac{0}{0}$.

1st. Suppose the numerator and denominator of the fraction

$$\frac{X}{X'},$$

to become infinite by the supposition of $x=a$. The fraction can be placed under the form

$$\frac{\frac{1}{X'}}{\frac{1}{X}},$$

which reduces to $\frac{0}{0}$, when X and X' are infinite.

2d. We may have the product of two factors, one of which becomes 0 and the other infinite, when a particular value is given to the variable.

In the product PQ, let us suppose that $x = a$, makes $P = 0$ and $Q = \infty$. We would then write the product under the form,

$$PQ = \frac{P}{\frac{1}{Q}}$$

which becomes $\frac{0}{0}$ when $x = a$.

108. Let us take, as an example, the function

$$(1-x)\operatorname{tang}\frac{1}{2}\pi x;$$

in which π designates 180°.

If we make $x = 1$, the first factor becomes 0, and the second infinite. But

$$\operatorname{tang}\frac{1}{2}\pi x = \frac{1}{\cot\frac{1}{2}\pi x};$$

hence, $$(1-x)\operatorname{tang}\frac{1}{2}\pi x = \frac{1-x}{\cot\frac{1}{2}\pi x},$$

the value of which is $\frac{2}{\pi}$ when $x = 1$.

CHAPTER V.

Of the Maxima and Minima of a Function of a Single Variable.

109. If we have

$$u = F(x),$$

the value of the function u may be changed in two ways: first, by increasing the variable x; and secondly, by diminishing it.

If we designate by u' the *first* value which u assumes when x is increased, and by u'' the *first* value which u assumes when x is diminished, we shall have three consecutive values of the function

$$u', \quad u, \quad u''.$$

Now, when u is greater than both u' and u'', u is said to be a *maximum*: and when u is less than both u' and u'', it is said to be a *minimum*.

Hence, *the maximum value of a variable function is greater than the value which immediately precedes, or the value that immediately follows: and the minimum value of a variable function is less than the value which immediately precedes or the value that immediately follows.*

110. Let us now determine the analytical conditions which characterize the maximum and minimum values of a variable function.

If in the function

$$u = F(x),$$

the variable x be first increased by h, and then diminished by h, we shall have (Art. 41),

$$u' = F(x+h) = u + \frac{du}{dx}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2u}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3u}{dx^3}\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \&c.,$$

$$u'' = F(x-h) = u - \frac{du}{dx}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2u}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} - \frac{d^3u}{dx^3}\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \&c.;$$

and consequently,

$$u' - u = \frac{du}{dx}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2u}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3u}{dx^3}\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \&c.,$$

$$u'' - u = -\frac{du}{dx}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2u}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} - \frac{d^3u}{dx^3}\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \&c.$$

Now, if u has a maximum value, the limits of $u' - u$ and $u'' - u$, will both be negative; and if u is a minimum, the limits of $u' - u$ and $u'' - u$ will both be positive. Hence, in order that u may have a maximum or minimum value, the signs of the limits of the two developments must be both minus or both plus.

But since the terms involving the first power of h, in the two developments, have contrary signs, it follows that the limits of the developments will have contrary signs (Art. 44); hence, the function u can neither have a maximum or a minimum unless

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 0;$$

and the roots of this equation will give all the values of x which can render the function u either a maximum or a minimum.

Having made the first differential coefficient equal to 0, the signs of the limits of the developments will depend on the sign of the second differential coefficient.

But since the signs of these limits are both negative when u is a maximum, and both positive when u is a minimum, it follows that the second differential coefficient will be negative when the function is a maximum, and positive when it is a minimum. Hence, the roots of the equation

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 0,$$

being substituted in the second differential coefficient, will render it negative in case of a maximum, and positive in case of a minimum; and since there may be more than one value of x which will satisfy these conditions, it follows that there may be more than one maximum or one minimum.

But if the roots of the equation

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 0,$$

reduce the second differential coefficient to 0, the signs of the limits of the developments will depend on the signs of the terms which involve the third differential coefficient; and these signs being different, there can neither be a maximum or a minimum, unless the values of x also reduce the third differential coefficient to 0. When this is the case, substitute the roots of the equation

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 0,$$

in the fourth differential coefficient; if it becomes negative there will be a maximum, if positive a minimum. If the values of x reduce the fourth differential coefficient to 0, the following differential coefficient must be examined. Hence, in order to find the values of x which will render the proposed function a maximum or a minimum.

1st. *Find the roots of the equation*

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 0.$$

2d. *Substitute these roots in the succeeding differential coefficients, until one is found which does not reduce to* 0. *Then, if the differential coefficient so found be of an odd order, the values of* x *will not render the function either a maximum or a minimum. But if it be of an even order, and negative, the function will be a maximum; if positive, a minimum.*

111. *Remark.* Before applying the preceding rules to particular examples, it may be well to remark, that if a variable function is multiplied or divided by a constant quantity, the same values of the variable which render the function a maximum or a minimum, will also render the product or quotient a maximum or a minimum, and hence the constant may be neglected.

2. Any value of the variable which will render the function a maximum or a minimum, will also render any root or power a maximum or a minimum; and hence, if a function is under a radical, the radical may be omitted.

EXAMPLES.

1. To find the value of x which will render y a maximum or a minimum in the equation of the circle

$$y^2 + x^2 = R^2,$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{x}{y},$$

making $-\frac{x}{y} = 0$, gives $x = 0$.

The second differential coefficient is

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -\frac{x^2 + y^2}{y^3},$$

and since making $x = 0$, gives $y = R$, we have

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -\frac{1}{R}$$

which being negative, the value of $x = 0$ renders y a maximum.

2. Find the values of x which will render y a maximum or a minimum in the equation,

$$y = a - bx + x^2,$$

differentiating, we find

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -b + 2x, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 2,$$

making, $-b + 2x = 0$, gives $x = \frac{b}{2}$;

and since the second differential coefficient is positive, this value of x will render y a minimum. The minimum

value of y is found by substituting the value of x, in the primitive equation It is

$$y = a - \frac{b^2}{4}.$$

3. Find the value of x which will render the function

$$u = a^4 + b^3x - c^2x^2,$$

a maximum or a minimum,

$$\frac{du}{dx} = b^3 - 2c^2x, \qquad \text{hence} \qquad x = \frac{b^3}{2c^2};$$

and,

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2} = -2c^2:$$

hence, the function is a maximum, and the maximum value is

$$u = a^4 + \frac{b^6}{4c^2}.$$

4. Let us take the function

$$u = 3a^2x^3 - b^4x + c^5,$$

we find $\frac{du}{dx} = 9a^2x^2 - b^4$, and $x = \pm\frac{b^2}{3a}$.

The second differential coefficient is

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2} = 18a^2x.$$

Substituting the plus root of x, we have

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2} = +6ab^2,$$

which gives a minimum, and substituting the negative root, we have

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2} = -6ab^2,$$

which gives a maximum.

The minimum value of the function is,

$$u = c^5 - \frac{2b^6}{9a};$$

and the maximum value

$$u = c^5 + \frac{2b^6}{9a}.$$

112. *Remark.* It frequently happens that the value of the first differential coefficient may be decomposed into two factors, X and X', each containing x, and one of them, X for example, reducing to 0 for that value of x, which renders the function a maximum or a minimum. When the differential coefficient of the first order takes this form, the general method of finding the second differential coefficient may be much simplified. For, if

$$\frac{du}{dx} = XX',$$

we shall have

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2} = \frac{X'dX}{dx} + \frac{XdX'}{dx}.$$

But by hypothesis X reduces to 0 for that value of x which renders the function u a maximum or a minimum

hence,

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2} = \frac{X'dX}{dx};$$

from which we obtain the following rule for finding the second differential coefficient.

Differentiate that factor of the first differential coefficient which reduces to 0, *multiply it by the other factor, and divide the product by* dx.

5. To divide a quantity into two such parts that the mth power of one of the parts multiplied by the nth power of the other shall be a maximum or a minimum.

Designate the given quantity by a and one of the parts by x, then will $a-x$ represent the other part. Let the product of their powers be designated by u; we shall then have

$$u = x^m(a-x)^n,$$

whence, $$\frac{du}{dx} = mx^{m-1}(a-x)^n - nx^m(a-x)^{n-1},$$

$$= (ma - mx - nx)x^{m-1}(a-x)^{n-1},$$

and by placing each of the factors equal to 0, we have

$$x = \frac{ma}{m+n}, \qquad x = 0, \qquad x = a.$$

The second differential coefficient corresponding to the first of these values, found by the method just explained, is

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2} = -(m+n)x^{m-1}(a-x)^{n-1};$$

and substituting for x its value, it becomes

$$-\frac{m^{m-1}n^{n-1}a^{m+n-2}}{(m+n)^{m+n-3}};$$

hence, this value of x renders the product a maximum. The two other values of x satisfy the *equation* of the

problem, but do not satisfy the enunciation, since they are not *parts* of the given quantity a.

Remark. If m and n are each equal to unity, the quantity will be divided into equal parts.

6. To determine the conditions which will render y a maximum or a minimum in the equation

$$y^2 - 2mxy + x^2 - a^2 = 0.$$

The first differential coefficient is

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{my - x}{y - mx};$$

hence, $my - x = 0$, or $y = \frac{x}{m}$.

Substituting this value of y in the given equation, we find

$$x = \frac{ma}{\sqrt{1 - m^2}};$$

and the value of y corresponding to this value of x is

$$y = \frac{a}{\sqrt{1 - m^2}}.$$

To determine whether y is a maximum or a minimum, let us pass to the second differential coefficient. We have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = (my - x)(y - mx)^{-1};$$

hence,

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{\left(m\frac{dy}{dx} - 1\right)}{y - mx};$$

and since $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$, we have

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -\frac{1}{y - mx},$$

and by substituting for y and x their values, we have

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -\frac{1}{a\sqrt{1-m^2}};$$

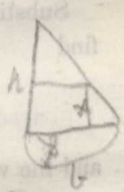
hence, y is a maximum.

7. To find the maximum rectangle which can be inscribed in a given triangle.

Let b denote the base of the triangle, h the altitude, y the base of the rectangle, and x the altitude. Then,

$$u = xy = \text{the area of the rectangle.}$$

But $$b : h :: y : h - x:$$



hence, $$y = \frac{bh - bx}{h},$$

and consequently,

$$u = \frac{bhx - bx^2}{h} = \frac{b}{h}(hx - x^2).$$

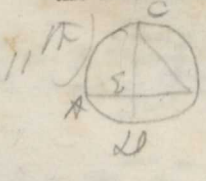
and omitting the constant factor,

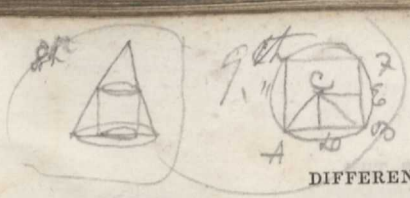
$$\frac{du}{dx} = h - 2x, \quad \text{or} \quad x = \frac{h}{2};$$

hence, the altitude of the rectangle is equal to half the altitude of the triangle: and since

$$\frac{d^2u}{dx^2} = -2,$$

the area is a maximum.





8. What is the altitude of a cylinder inscribed in a given right cone, when the solidity of the cylinder is a maximum?

Ans. One third the altitude of the cone.

9. What are the sides of the maximum rectangle inscribed in a given circle?

Ans. Each equal to $R\sqrt{2}$.

10. A cylindrical vessel is to contain a given quantity of water. Required the relation between the diameter of the base and the altitude in order that the interior surface may be a minimum.

Ans. Altitude = radius of base.

11. To find the altitude of a cone inscribed in a given sphere, which shall render the convex surface of the cone a maximum.

Ans. Altitude $= \frac{4}{3}R$.

12. To find the maximum right-angled triangle which can be described on a given line.

Ans. When the two sides are equal.

13. What is the length of the axis of the maximum parabola that can be cut from a given right cone?

Ans. Three-fourths the side of the cone.

14. To find the least triangle which can be formed by the radii produced, and a tangent line to the quadrant of a given circle.

Ans. When the point of contact is at the middle of the arc.

15. What is the altitude of the maximum cylinder which can be inscribed in a given paraboloid?

Ans. Half the axis of the paraboloid.

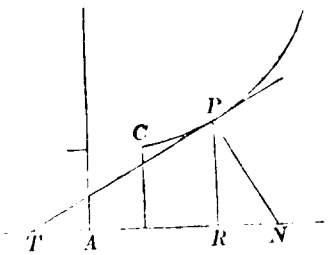
CHAPTER VI.

Application of the Differential Calculus to the Theory of Curves.

113. It has been shown in (Art. 13), that every relation between a function and a single variable on which it depends, may subsist between the ordinate and abscissa of a curve. Hence, if we represent the ordinate of a curve by a function y, the abscissa may be represented by the variable x.

Of Tangents and Normals.

114. We have seen (Art. 15), that if y represents the ordinate and x the abscissa of any curve as CP, the tangent of the angle PTA, which the tangent forms with the axis of abscissas will be represented



by $\frac{dy}{dx}$;

dy and dx being the differentials of the ordinate and abscissa of the point of contact P.

But we have (Trig. Th. II),

$$1 : TR :: \text{tang}\, T : RP;$$

that is,

$$1 : TR :: \frac{dy}{dx} : y:$$

hence,

$$TR = y\frac{dx}{dy} = \text{sub-tangent.}$$

115. The tangent TP is equal to the square root of the sum of the squares of TR and RP; hence,

$$TP = y\sqrt{1 + \frac{dx^2}{dy^2}} = \text{tangent.}$$

116. From the similar triangles TPR, RPN, we have

$$TR : PR :: PR : RN,$$

hence,

$$y\frac{dx}{dy} : y :: y : RN,$$

consequently,

$$RN = y\frac{dy}{dx} = \text{sub-normal.}$$

117. The normal PN is equal to the square root of the sum of the squares of PR and RN; hence,

$$PN = y\sqrt{1 + \frac{dy^2}{dx^2}} = \text{normal.}$$

118. Let it be now required to apply these formulas to lines of the second order, of which the general equation (An. Geom. Bk. VI, Prop. XII, Sch. 3), is,

$$y^2 = mx + nx^2.$$

Differentiating, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{m + 2nx}{2y} = \frac{m + 2nx}{2\sqrt{mx + nx^2}};$$

substituting this value, we find

$$\text{sub-tangent } TR = y\frac{dx}{dy} = \frac{2(mx+nx^2)}{m+2nx},$$

$$TP = y\sqrt{1+\frac{dx^2}{dy^2}} = \sqrt{mx+nx^2+4\left[\frac{mx+nx^2}{m+2nx}\right]^2},$$

$$\text{sub-normal } RN = y\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{m+2nx}{2},$$

$$PN = y\sqrt{1+\frac{dy^2}{dx^2}} = \sqrt{mx+nx^2+\frac{1}{4}(m+2nx)^2}.$$

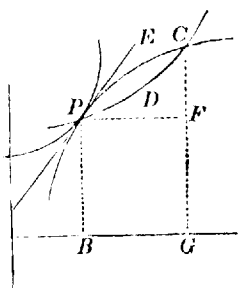
By attributing proper values to m and n, the above formulas will become applicable to each of the conic sections. In the case of the parabola, $n = 0$, and we have

$$TR = 2x, \qquad TP = \sqrt{mx+4x^2},$$

$$RN = \frac{m}{2}, \qquad PN = \sqrt{mx+\frac{1}{4}m^2}.$$

119. It is often necessary to represent the tangent and normal lines by their equations. To determine these, in a general manner, it will be necessary first to consider the analytical conditions which render any two curves tangent to each other.

Let the two curves, PDC, PEC, intersect each other at P and C.



Designate the co-ordinates of the first curve by x and y, and the co-ordinates of the second by x', y'. Then, for the common point P, we shall have

$$x = x', \qquad y = y'.$$

If we represent BG, the increment of the abscissa, by h, we shall have, from the theorem of Taylor (Art. 44),

$$CG - PB = CF = \frac{dy}{dx}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3y}{dx^3}\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \text{\&c.},$$

$$CG - PB = CF = \frac{dy'}{dx'}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2y'}{dx'^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3y'}{dx'^3}\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \text{\&c.};$$

hence, by placing the two members equal to each other, and dividing by h, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\frac{h}{1.2} + \text{\&c.}, = \frac{dy'}{dx'} + \frac{d^2y'}{dx'^2}\frac{h}{1.2} + \text{\&c.}$$

If we now pass to the limit, by making $h = 0$, we shall have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy'}{dx'},$$

in which case the point C will become consecutive with P, and the curve PEC tangent to the curve PDC. Hence, *two lines will be tangent to each other at a common point, when the co-ordinates and first differential coefficient of the one, are equal to the co-ordinates and first differential coefficient of the other.*

120. The equation of a straight line is of the form

$$y = ax + b,$$

hence,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = a.$$

But the equation of a straight line passing through a given point, of which the co-ordinates are x'', y'', is (An. Geom. Bk. II, Prop. IV),

$$y - y'' = a(x - x''),$$

or by substituting for a its value, we have, for the equation of a straight line passing through a given point,

$$y - y'' = \frac{dy}{dx}(x - x'').$$

This line may be made tangent to a curve at any point of which the co-ordinates are x'', y'', by substituting for $\frac{dy}{dx}$ the first differential coefficient found from the equation of the curve, and making x'', y'', equal to x'', y'' of the curve.

121. Let it be required, for example, to make the line tangent to a circle at a point of which the co-ordinates are x'', y''. Since the co-ordinates of this point will satisfy the equation of the curve, we have

$$x''^2 + y''^2 = R^2,$$

and by differentiating,

$$\frac{dy''}{dx''} = -\frac{x''}{y''};$$

and by substituting this value in the equation of the line, and recollecting that $x''^2 + y''^2 = R^2$, we have

$$yy'' + xx'' = R^2,$$

which is the equation of a tangent line to a circle.

122. A normal line is perpendicular to the tangent at the point of contact, and since the equation of the tangent is of the form

$$y - y'' = \frac{dy}{dx}(x - x''),$$

$1 + a'a = 0$

$a' = \frac{-1}{a}$

the equation of the normal will be of the form (An. Geom. Bk. II, Prop. VII, Sch. 2),

$$y - y'' = -\frac{dx}{dy}(x - x''),$$

and this line will become normal to a curve at a point of which the co-ordinates are x'', y'', if the value of $\frac{dx''}{dy''}$ be found from the equation of the curve, and substituted for $\frac{dx}{dy}$, and the co-ordinates x'', y'' of the straight line be made equal to x'', y'' of the curve.

The equation of the normal in the circle will take the form,

$$y = \frac{y''}{x''}x.$$

123. To find the equation of a tangent line to an ellipse at a point of which the co-ordinates are x'', y'', we have,

$$A^2y''^2 + B^2x''^2 = A^2B^2.$$

By differentiating, we have

$$\frac{dy''}{dx''} = -\frac{B^2x''}{A^2y''};$$

hence, we have

$$y - y'' = -\frac{B^2x''}{A^2y''}(x - x''),$$

which becomes, after reducing,

$$A^2yy'' + B^2xx'' = A^2B^2.$$

The equation of the normal is

$$y - y'' = \frac{A^2y''}{B^2x''}(x - x'').$$

124. To find the equation of a tangent to lines of the second order, of which the equation for a particular point (An. Geom. Bk. VI, Prop. XII, Sch. 3) is

$$y''^2 = mx'' + nx''^2.$$

By differentiating, we have

$$\frac{dy''}{dx''} = \frac{m + 2nx''}{2y''};$$

hence, the equation of the tangent to a line of the second order is

$$y - y'' = \frac{m + 2nx''}{2y''}(x - x''),$$

and the equation of the normal

$$y - y'' = -\frac{2y''}{m + 2nx''}(x - x'').$$

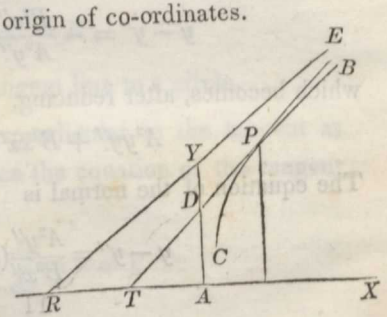
Of Asymptotes of Curves.

125. An asymptote of a curve is a line which continually approaches the curve, and becomes tangent to it at an infinite distance from the origin of co-ordinates.

Let AX and AY be the co-ordinate axes, and

$$y - y'' = \frac{dy''}{dx''}(x - x''),$$

the equation of any tangent line, as TP.



If in the equation of the tangent, we make in succession $y=0$, $x=0$, we shall find

$$x=AT=x''-y''\frac{dx''}{dy''}, \qquad y=AD=y''-x''\frac{dy''}{dx''}.$$

If the curve CPB has an asymptote RE, it is plain that the tangent PT will approach the asymptote RE, when the point of contact P, is moved along the curve from the origin of co-ordinates, and T and D will also approach the points R and Y, and will coincide with them when the co-ordinates of the point of tangency are infinite.

In order, therefore, to determine if a curve have asymptotes, we make, in succession, $x=\infty$ and $y=\infty$ in the values of AT, AD. If either of these become finite, the curve will have an asymptote.

If both the values are finite, the asymptote will be inclined to both the co-ordinate axes: if one of the distances becomes finite and the other infinite, the asymptote will be parallel to one of the co-ordinate axes; and if they both become 0, the asymptote will pass through the origin of co-ordinates. In the last case, we shall know but one point of the asymptote, but its direction may be determined by finding the value of $\frac{dy}{dx}$, under the supposition that the co-ordinates are infinite.

126. Let us now examine the equation

$$y^2=mx+nx^2,$$

of lines of the second order, and see if these lines have asymptotes. We find

$$AT = x - \frac{2y^2}{m+2nx} = \frac{-mx}{m+2nx},$$

$$AD = y - \frac{mx+2nx^2}{2y} = \frac{mx}{2\sqrt{mx+nx^2}};$$

which may be put under the forms

$$AT = \frac{-m}{\frac{m}{x}+2n}, \qquad AD = \frac{m}{2\sqrt{\frac{m}{x}+n}},$$

and making $x = \infty$, we have

$$AR = -\frac{m}{2n}, \quad \text{and} \quad AE = \frac{m}{2\sqrt{n}}.$$

If now we make $n = 0$, the curve becomes a parabola, and both the limits, AR, AE, become infinite: hence, the parabola has no rectilinear asymptote.

If we make n negative, the curve becomes an ellipse, and AE becomes imaginary: hence, the ellipse has no asymptote.

But if we make n positive, the equation becomes that of the hyperbola, and both the values, AR, AE, become finite. If we substitute for n its value $\frac{B^2}{A^2}$, we shall have

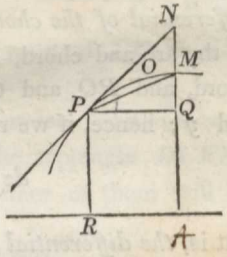
$$AR = -A, \quad \text{and} \quad AE = \pm B.$$

$n = \frac{2B^2}{A}$ in the hyperbola

Differentials of the Arcs and Areas of Segments of Curves.

127. It is plain, that the chord and arc of a curve will approach each other continually as the arc is diminished, and hence, we might conclude that the limit of their ratio is unity. But as several propositions depend on this relation between the arc and chord, we shall demonstrate it rigorously.

128. If we suppose the ordinate PR of the curve, POM to be a function of the abscissa, we shall have (Art. 16),



$$PQ = h,$$

and $$MQ = (P + P'h)h;$$

in which $$P = \frac{dy}{dx}.$$

Hence, $$PM = \sqrt{h^2 + (P + P'h)^2 h^2} = h\sqrt{1 + (P + P'h)^2}.$$

We also have $$NQ = Ph;$$

hence, $$PN = \sqrt{h^2 + P^2 h^2} = h\sqrt{1 + P^2},$$

$$NM = NQ - MQ = -P'h;$$

hence, we have

$$\frac{PN + MN}{PM} = \frac{h\sqrt{1 + P^2} - P'h^2}{h\sqrt{1 + (P + P'h)^2}} = \frac{\sqrt{1 + P^2} - P'h^2}{\sqrt{1 + (P + P'h)^2}};$$

of which the limit, by making $h=0$, is

$$\frac{\sqrt{1+P'^2}}{\sqrt{1+P^2}}=1.$$

But the arc POM can never be less than the chord PM, nor greater than the broken line PNM which contains it; hence, the limit of the ratio

$$\frac{POM}{PM}=1;$$

and consequently, *the differential of the arc is equal to the differential of the chord.* But when we pass to the limit of the arc and chord, PM becomes the differential of the chord, and PQ and QM, become the differentials of x and y; hence, if we represent the arc by z, we shall have

$$dz=\sqrt{dx^2+dy^2};$$

that is, *the differential of the arc of a curve, at any point, is equal to the square root of the sum of the squares of the differentials of the co-ordinates.*

129. To determine the differential of the arc of a circle of which the equation is

$$x^2+y^2=R^2,$$

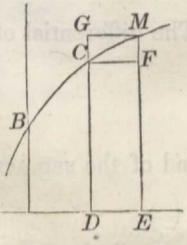
we have $$xdx+ydy=0, \quad \text{or} \quad dy=-\frac{xdx}{y};$$

whence, $$dz=\sqrt{dx^2+\frac{x^2dx^2}{y^2}}=\frac{dx}{y}\sqrt{x^2+y^2},$$

$$=\frac{Rdx}{y}=\pm\frac{Rdx}{\sqrt{R^2-x^2}},$$

the same as determined in (Art 71). The plus sign is to be used when the abscissa x and the arc are increasing functions of each other, and the minus sign when they are decreasing functions (Art. 31).

130. Let BCM be any segment of a curve, and let it be required to find the differential of its area.



The two rectangles $DCFE$, $DGME$, having the same base DE, are to each other as DC to EM; and hence, the limit of their ratio is equal to the limit of the ratio of DC to EM, which is equal to unity.

But the curvelinear area $DCME$ is less than the rectangle $DGME$, and greater than the rectangle $DCFE$: hence, the limit of its ratio to either of them will be unity. But,

$$\frac{DCME}{DE} = \frac{DCME}{DE} \times \frac{DEFC}{DEFC} = DC \times \frac{DCME}{DEFC},$$

or by representing the area of the segment by s and the ordinate DC by y, and passing to the limit, we have

$$\frac{ds}{dx} = y, \qquad \text{or} \qquad ds = ydx;$$

hence, *the differential of the area of a segment of any curve, is equal to the ordinate into the differential of the abscissa.*

131. To find the differential of the area of a circular segment, we have

$$x^2 + y^2 = R^2, \qquad \text{and} \qquad y = \sqrt{R^2 - x^2};$$

hence,

$$ds = dx\sqrt{R^2 - x^2}.$$

The differential of the segment of an ellipse, is

$$ds = \frac{B}{A}dx\sqrt{A^2 - x^2},$$

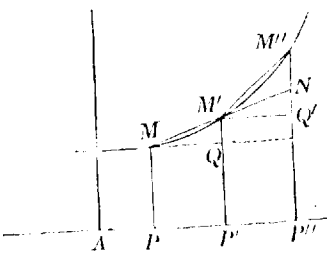
and of the segment of a parabola

$$ds = dx\sqrt{2px}.$$

Signification of the Differential Coefficients.

132. It has already been shown that, if the ordinate of a curve be regarded as a function of the abscissa, the first differential coefficient will be equal to the tangent of the angle which the tangent line forms with the axis of abscissas (Art. 15). We now propose to show the relation between a curve and the second differential coefficient, the ordinate being regarded as a function of the abscissa.

Let AP be the abscissa and PM the ordinate of a curve. From P lay off on the axis of abscissas $PP' = h$, and $PP'' = 2h$. Draw the ordinates PM, $P'M'$, $P''M''$; also the lines $MM'N$, $M'M''$; and lastly, MQ, $M'Q'$, parallel to the



axis of abscissas. Then will $M'Q = NQ'$, and we shall have

$$PM = y,$$

$$P'M' = y + \frac{dy}{dx}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \text{&c.},$$

$$P''M'' = y + \frac{dy}{dx}\frac{2h}{1} + \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\frac{4h^2}{1.2} + \text{&c.},$$

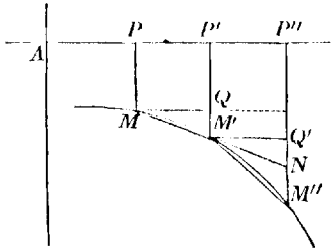
$$P'M' - PM = M'Q = \frac{dy}{dx}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \text{&c.},$$

$$P''M'' - P'M' = M''Q' = \frac{dy}{dx}h + \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\frac{3h^2}{1.2} + \text{&c.}$$

$$M''Q' - M'Q = + M''N = \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}h^2 + \text{&c.}$$

Now, since the sign of the first member of the equation is essentially positive, the sign of the second member will also be positive (Alg. Art. 85). But if we pass to the limit, by diminishing h, the sign of the second member will depend on that of the second differential coefficient (Art. 44): hence, the second differential coefficient is positive.

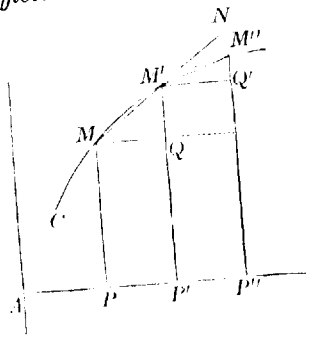
If the curve is below the axis of abscissas, the ordinates will be negative, and it is easily seen that we shall then have



$$M''Q' - M'Q = - M''N = -\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}h^2 + \text{&c}$$

Now, since the first member is negative, the second member will be negative: hence we conclude that, *if a curve is convex towards the axis of abscissas, the ordinate and second differential coefficient will have like signs.*

133. Let us now consider the curve $CMM'M''$, which is concave towards the axis of abscissas. We shall have,



$$PM = y,$$

$$P'M' = y + \frac{dy}{dx}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \&c.,$$

$$P''M'' = y + \frac{dy}{dx}\frac{2h}{1} + \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\frac{4h^2}{1.2} + \&c.,$$

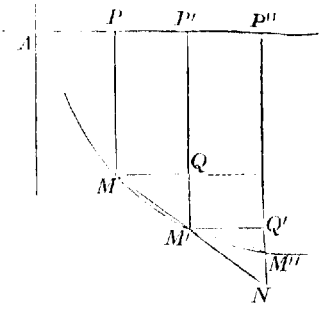
$$P'M' - PM = M'Q = \frac{dy}{dx}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \&c.,$$

$$P''M'' - P'M' = M''Q' = \frac{dy}{dx}h + \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\frac{3h^2}{1.2} + \&c.,$$

$$M''Q' - M'Q = -NM'' = \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}h^2 + \&c.$$

But since the first member of the equation is negative, the essential sign of the second member will also be negative: hence, the second differential coefficient will be negative.

If the curve is below the axis of abscissas, the ordinate will be negative, and it is easily seen that we should then have



$$M''Q' - M'Q = + NM'' = \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} h^2 + \text{ \&c.};$$

hence we conclude that, *if a curve is concave towards the axis of abscissas, the ordinate and second differential coefficient will have contrary signs.*

The ordinate will be considered as positive, unless the contrary is mentioned.

134. *Remark* 1. The co-ordinates x and y, determine a single point of a curve, as M. The first differential of y is the limit of the difference between the ordinates PM, $P'M'$, or the difference between two consecutive ordinates.

The second differential of y is the limit of $M''N$, and is derived from $M'Q$ or dy, in the same way that dy is derived from the primitive function. The abscissa x being supposed to increase uniformly, the difference, and consequently the limit of the difference between PP' and $P'P''$ is 0: therefore its second differential is 0. The co-ordinates x and y, and the first and second differentials determine three points, M, M', M'', consecutive with each other.

135. *Remark* 2. When the curve is convex towards the axis of abscissa, the first differential coefficient, which

represents the tangent of the angle formed by the tangent line with the axis of abscissas, is an increasing function of the abscissa: hence, its differential coefficient, that is, the second differential coefficient of the function, ought to be positive (Art. 31).

When the curve is concave, the first differential coefficient is a decreasing function of the abscissa; hence, the second differential coefficient should be negative (Art. 31).

Examination of the Singular Points of Curves.

136. A singular point of a curve is one which is distinguished by some particular property not enjoyed by the points of the curve in general: such as, the point at which the tangent is parallel, or perpendicular to, the axis of abscissas.

137. Since the first differential coefficient expresses the value of the tangent of the angle which the tangent line forms with the axis of abscissas, and since the tangent is 0, when the angle is 0, and infinite when the angle is 90°, it follows that the roots of the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 0,$$

will give the abscissas of all the points at which the tangent is parallel to the axis of abscissas, and the roots of the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \infty, \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{dx}{dy} = 0,$$

will give the abscissas of all the points at which the tangent is perpendicular to the axis of abscissas.

138. If a curve from being convex towards the axis of abscissas becomes concave, or from being concave becomes convex, the point at which the change of curvature takes place is called a *point of inflexion*.

Since the ordinate and differential coefficient of the second order have the same sign when the curve is convex towards the axis of abscissas, and contrary signs when it is concave, it follows that at the point of inflexion, the second differential coefficient will change its sign. But between the positive and negative values there will be one value of x which will reduce the second differential coefficient to 0 (Alg. Art. 288): hence the roots of the equation

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 0,$$

will give the abscissas of the points of inflexion.

139. Let us now apply these principles in discussing the equation of the circle

$$x^2 + y^2 = R^2.$$

We have, by differentiating,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{x}{y},$$

and placing

$$-\frac{x}{y} = 0, \quad \text{we have} \quad x = 0.$$

Substituting this value in the equation of the curve, we have

$$y = \pm R;$$

hence, the tangent is parallel to the axis of abscissas at the two points where the axis of ordinates intersects the circumference.

If we make

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{x}{y} = 0, \qquad \text{or} \qquad -\frac{y}{x} = 0,$$

we have $y = 0$; substituting this value in the equation, we find

$$x = \pm R,$$

and hence, the tangent is perpendicular to the axis of abscissas at the points where the axis intersects the circumference.

The second differential coefficient is equal to

$$-\frac{R^2}{y^3},$$

which will be negative when y is positive, and positive when y is negative. Hence, the circumference of the circle is concave towards the axis of abscissas.

If we apply a similar analysis to the equation of the ellipse, we shall find the tangents parallel to the axis of abscissas at the extremities of one axis, and perpendicular to it at the extremities of the other, and the curve concave towards its axes.

140. Let us now discuss a class of curves, which may be represented by the equation

$$y = b \pm c(x - a)^m,$$

in which we suppose c to be positive or negative, and different values to be attributed to the exponent m.

1st. *When* c *is positive, and* m *entire and even.*

By differentiating, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = mc(x-a)^{m-1},$$

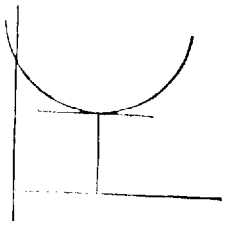
$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = m(m-1)c(x-a)^{m-2}.$$

If we place the value $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$, we find $x = a$, and substituting this value in the equation of the curve, we find

$$y = b:$$

hence, $x = a$, $y = b$, are the co-ordinates of the point at which the tangent line is parallel to the axis of abscissas.

Since m is even, $m-2$ will also be even, and hence the second differential coefficient will be positive for all values of x. The curve will therefore be convex towards the axis of X, and there will be no point of inflexion.



The value of $x = a$ renders the ordinate y a minimum, since after m differentiations a differential coefficient of an even order becomes constant and positive (Art. 110).

The curve does not intersect the axis of X, but cuts the axis of Y at a distance from the origin expressed by

$$y = b + ca^m.$$

141. 2d. *When* c *is negative, and* m *entire and even.*

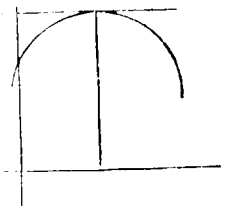
We shall have, by differentiating,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -mc(x-a)^{m-1},$$

and

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -m(m-1)c(x-a)^{m-2}.$$

The discussion is the same as before, excepting that the second differential coefficient being negative for all values of x, the curve is concave towards the axis of abscissas, and the value of $x = a$, renders the ordinate y a maximum (Art. 110).



112. 3d. *When* c *is plus or minus, and* m *entire and uneven.*

We shall have, by differentiating,

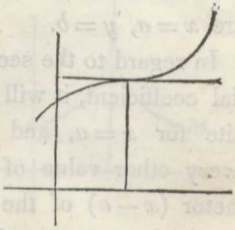
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \pm mc(x-a)^{m-1},$$

and

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \pm m(m-1)c(x-a)^{m-2}.$$

The first differential coefficient will be 0, when $x = a$; hence, the tangent will be parallel to the axis of abscissas, at the point of which the co-ordinates are $x = a$, $y = b$.

Since the exponent $m-2$ is uneven, the factor $(x-a)^{m-2}$ will be negative when $x<a$, and positive when $x>a$; hence, this factor changes its sign at the point of the curve of which the abscissa is $x=a$.



If c is positive, the second differential coefficient will be negative for $x<a$, and positive for $x>a$: hence there will be an inflexion when $x=a$. If c were negative, the curve would be first convex and then concave towards the axis of abscissas, but there would still be an inflexion at the point $x=a$. At this point the tangent line separates the two branches of the curve.

There will, in this case, be neither a maximum nor a minimum, since after m differentiations a differential coefficient of an odd order, will become equal to a constant quantity (Art. 110).

143. 4th. *When* c *is positive or negative, and* m *a fraction having an even numerator, as* $\mathrm{m}=\frac{2}{3}$.

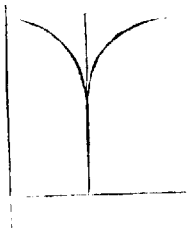
By differentiating, and supposing c positive, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{2}{3}c(x-a)^{\frac{2}{3}-1}=\frac{2c}{3(x-a)^{\frac{1}{3}}},$$

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}=-\frac{2c}{9(x-a)^{\frac{4}{3}}},$$

If we make $x=a$, the first differential coefficient will become infinite; and the tangent will be perpendicular to

the axis of abscissas, at the point of which the co-ordinates are $x = a$, $y = b$.



In regard to the second differential coefficient, it will become infinite for $x = a$, and negative for every other value of x, since the factor $(x - a)$ of the denominator is raised to a power denoted by an even exponent. Hence, the curve will be concave towards the axis of abscissas.

If we take the equation of the curve

$$y = b + c(x - a)^{\frac{2}{3}},$$

and make $x = a + h$, and $x = a - h$, we shall have, in either case,

$$y = b + ch^{\frac{2}{3}};$$

and hence, y will be less for $x = a$, than for any other value of x, either greater or less than a. Hence, the value $x = a$, renders y a *minimum*.

If c were negative, the equation would be of the form

$$y = b - c(x - a)^{\frac{2}{3}};$$

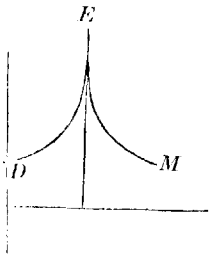
and we should have, by differentiating,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{2c}{3(x - a)^{\frac{1}{3}}},$$

and

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -\frac{2c}{9(x - a)^{\frac{4}{3}}}.$$

The first and second differential coefficients will be infinite for $x = a$, and the second differential coefficient will be positive for all values of x greater or less than a; and hence, the curve will be convex towards the axis of abscissas.



If, in the equation of the curve

$$y = b - c(x-a)^{\frac{2}{3}},$$

we make $x = a + h$, and $x = a - h$, we shall have, in either case,

$$y = b - ch^{\frac{2}{3}};$$

and hence, y will be greater for $x = a$, than for any other value of x either greater or less than a. Hence, the value $x = a$, renders y a maximum.

144. *Remark.* The conditions of a maximum or a minimum deduced in Art. 110, were established by means of the theorem of Taylor. Now, the case in which the function changes its form by a particular value attributed to x, was excluded in the demonstration of that theorem (Art. 45). Hence, the conditions of minimum and maximum deduced in the two last cases, ought not to have appeared among the general conditions of Art. 110.

We therefore see that there are two species of maxima and minima, the one characterized by

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 0, \qquad \text{the other by} \qquad \frac{dy}{dx} = \infty.$$

In the first, we determine whether the function is a maximum or a minimum by examining the subsequent differential coefficients; and in the second, by examining the value of the function before and after that value of x which renders the first differential coefficient infinite.

The branches MD, ME, which are both represented by the equation

$$y = b \pm c(x-a)^{\frac{2}{3}},$$

are not considered as parts of a continuous curve. For, the general relations between y and x which determine each of the parts MD, ME, is entirely broken at the point M, where $x = a$. The two parts are therefore regarded as separate branches which unite at M. The point of union is called a *cusp*, or a *cusp point*.

145. 5th. *When* c *is positive or negative and* m *a fraction having an even denominator, as* $m = \frac{3}{4}$.

Under this supposition the equation of the curve will become

$$y = b \pm c(x-a)^{\frac{3}{4}},$$

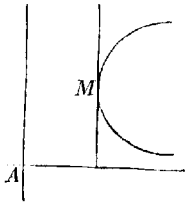
and by differentiating, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \pm \frac{3c}{4(x-a)^{\frac{1}{4}}},$$

and

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \mp \frac{3c}{4.4(x-a)^{\frac{5}{4}}}.$$

The curve represented by this equation will have two branches: the one corresponding to the plus sign will be concave towards the axis of abscissas, and the one corresponding to the minus sign will be convex. Every value of x less than a will render y imaginary. The co-ordinates of the point M, are $x = a$, $y = b$.



146. 6th. *When* c *is positive or negative and* m *a fraction having an uneven numerator and an uneven denominator, as* $m = \frac{3}{5}$.

Under this supposition the equation will become

$$y = b \pm c(x-a)^{\frac{3}{5}},$$

and by differentiating, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \pm \frac{3c}{5(x-a)^{\frac{2}{5}}},$$

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \mp \frac{3.2c}{5.5(x-a)^{\frac{7}{5}}};$$

from which we see that if we use the superior sign of the first equation, the curve will be convex towards the axis of abscissas for $x < a$, that there will be a point of inflexion for $x = a$, and that the curve will be concave for $x > a$. If the lower sign be employed, the first branch will become concave, and the other convex.

147. The cusps, which have been considered, were formed by the union of two curves that were convex to-

wards each other, and such are called, *cusps of the first order*.

It frequently happens, however, that the curves which unite, embrace each other. The equation

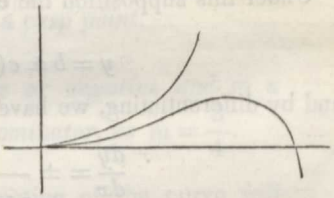
$$(y-x^2)^2=x^5,$$

furnishes an example of this kind. By extracting the square root of both members and transposing, we have

$$y=x^2\pm y^{\frac{5}{2}};$$

and by differentiating

$$\frac{dy}{dx}=2x\pm\frac{5}{2}x^{\frac{3}{2}}, \qquad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}=2\pm\frac{5}{2}\cdot\frac{3}{2}x^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$



We see by examining the equations, that the curve has two branches, both of which pass through the origin of co-ordinates. The upper branch, which corresponds to the plus sign, is constantly convex towards the axis of abscissas, while the lower branch is convex for $x<\frac{64}{225}$, and concave for $x>\frac{64}{225}$ and $x<1$. At the last point the curve passes below the axis of abscissas and becomes convex towards it. If we make the first differential coefficient equal to 0, we shall find $x=0$, and substituting this value in the equation of the curve, gives $y=0$; and hence, the axis of abscissas is tangent to both branches of the curve at the origin of co-ordinates. At this point the differential coefficient of the second order is positive for both branches of the curve, hence they

are both convex towards the axis. When the cusp is formed by the union of two curves which, at the point of contact, lie on the same side of the common tangent, it is called a cusp of the *second order*.

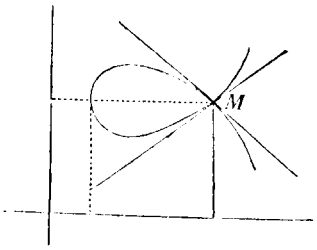
148. Let us, as another example, discuss the curve whose equation is

$$y = b + (x - a)\sqrt{x - c}.$$

By differentiating, we obtain

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \pm\sqrt{x - c} + \frac{x - a}{2\sqrt{x - c}}.$$

We see, from the equation of the curve, that y will be imaginary for all values of x less than c.



For $x = c$, we have $y = b$; and for $x > c$, we have two values of y and consequently two branches of the curve, until $x = a$ when they unite at the point M. For $x > a$ there will be two real values of y and consequently two branches of the curve. The point M, at which the branches intersect each other, is called a *multiple point*, and differs from a cusp by being a point of intersection instead of a point of tangency. At the multiple point M there are two tangents, one to each branch of the curve. The one makes an angle with the axis of abscissas, whose tangent is

$$+\sqrt{x - c} + \frac{x - a}{2\sqrt{x - c}};$$

the other, an angle whose tangent is

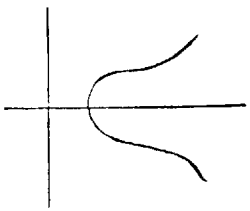
$$-\sqrt{x-c}-\frac{x-a}{2\sqrt{x-c}}.$$

149. Besides the cusps and multiple points which have already been discussed, there are sometimes other points lying entirely without the curve, and having no connexion with it, excepting that their co-ordinates will satisfy the equation of the curve.

For example, the equation

$$ay^2-x^3+bx^2=0,$$

will be satisfied for the values $x=\pm 0$, $y=\pm 0$; and hence, the origin of co-ordinates A, satisfies the equation of the curve, and enjoys the property of a multiple point, since it is the point of union of two values of x, and two values of y.



If we resolve the equation with respect to y, we find

$$y=\pm x\sqrt{\frac{x-b}{a}};$$

and hence, y will be imaginary for all negative values of x, and for all positive values between the limits $x=0$ and $x=b$. For all positive values of x greater than b, the values of y will be real.

The first differential coefficient is

$$\frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{x(3x-2b)}{2\sqrt{ax^2(x-b)}};$$

or by dividing by the common factor x,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3x - 2b}{2\sqrt{a(x-b)}}$$

and making $x = 0$, there results

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{2b}{2\sqrt{-ab}},$$

which is imaginary, as it should be, since there is no point of the curve which is consecutive with the isolated or conjugate point. The differential coefficients of the higher orders are also imaginary at the conjugate points.

150. We may draw the following conclusions from the preceding discussion.

1st. The equation $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$, determines the points at which the tangents are parallel to the axis of abscissas.

2d. The equation $\frac{dy}{dx} = \infty$, determines the points of the curve at which the tangents are perpendicular to the axis of abscissas. The two last equations also determine the cusps, if there are any.

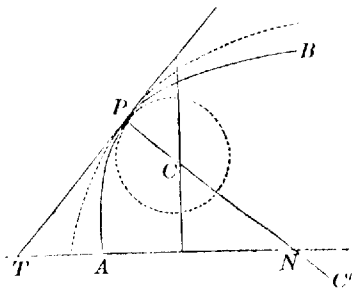
3d. The equation $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 0$, determines the points of inflexion.

4th. The equation $\frac{dy}{dx} =$ an imaginary constant, indicates a conjugate point.

CHAPTER VII.

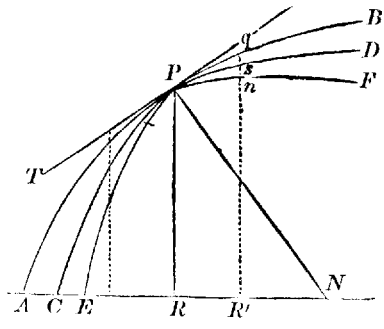
Of Osculatory Curves—Of Evolutes.

151. Let PT be tangent to the curve ABP at the point P, and PN a normal at the same point: then will PT be tangent to the circumference of every circle passing through P, and having its centre in the normal PN.



It is plain that the centre of a circle may be taken at some point C, so near to P, that the circumference shall fall within the curve APB, and then every circumference described with a less radius, will fall entirely within the curve. It is also apparent, that the centre may be taken at some point C', so remote from P, that the circumference shall fall between the curve APB and the tangent PT, and then every circumference described with a greater radius will fall without the curve. Hence, there are two classes of tangent circles which may be described; the one lying within the curve, and the other without it.

152. Let there be three curves, APB, CPD, EPF, which have a common tangent TP, and a common normal PN; then will they be tangent to each other at the point P. It does not follow, however, from this circumstance, that each curve will have an *equal tendency* to coincide with the tangent TP, nor does it follow that any two of the curves CPD, EPF, will have an equal tendency to coincide with the first curve APB.



It is now proposed to establish the general analytical conditions which determine the tendency of curves to coincide with each other, or with a common tangent.

Designate the co-ordinates of the first curve APB by x and y, the co-ordinates of the second CPD by x', y', and the co-ordinates of the third EPF by x'', y''. If we designate the common ordinate PR by y, y', y'', we shall then have

$$qR' = y + \frac{dy}{dx}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3y}{dx^3}\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \text{&c.},$$

$$sR' = y' + \frac{dy'}{dx'}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2y'}{dx'^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3y'}{dx'^3}\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \text{&c.};$$

$$nR' = y'' + \frac{dy''}{dx''}\frac{h}{1} + \frac{d^2y''}{dx''^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \frac{d^3y''}{dx''^3}\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \text{&c.}$$

But since the curves are tangent to each other at the point P, we have (Art. 119),

$$y = y' = y'', \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy'}{dx'} = \frac{dy''}{dx''}: \quad \text{hence,}$$

$$d = qs = \left(\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - \frac{d^2y'}{dx'^2}\right)\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \left(\frac{d^3y}{dx^3} - \frac{d^3y'}{dx'^3}\right)\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \text{\&c.},$$

$$d' = qn = \left(\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - \frac{d^2y''}{dx''^2}\right)\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \left(\frac{d^3y}{dx^3} - \frac{d^3y''}{dx''^3}\right)\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \text{\&c.}$$

Now, in order that the first curve APB shall approach more nearly to the second CPD than to the third EPF, we must have

$$d < d',$$

and consequently,

$$A\frac{h^2}{1.2} + B\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \text{\&c.} < A'\frac{h^2}{1.2} + B'\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \text{\&c.},$$

in which we have represented the coefficients in the first series by A, B, C, &c., and the coefficients in the second by A', B', C', &c.

Now, the limit of the first member of the inequality will always be less than the limit of the second, when its first term involves a higher power of h than the first term of the second. For, if $A = 0$, the first member will involve the highest power of h, and we shall have

$$B\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \text{\&c.} < A'\frac{h^2}{1.2} + B'\frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \text{\&c.},$$

and by dividing by h^2,

$$B\frac{h}{1.2.3} + \text{\&c.} < A'\frac{1}{1.2} + B'\frac{h}{1.2.3} + \text{\&c.},$$

and by passing to the limit

$$0 < A' \frac{1}{1.2}.$$

But when $A = 0$, we have

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{d^2y'}{dx'^2},$$

and hence, when three curves have a common ordinate, the first will approach nearer to the second than to the third, *if the number of equal differential coefficients between the first and second is greater than that between the first and third.* And consequently, if the first and second curves have $m+1$ differential coefficients which are equal to each other, and the first and third curves only m equal differential coefficients, the first curve will approach more nearly to the second than to the third. Hence it appears, that the order of contact of two curves will depend on the number of corresponding differential coefficients which are equal to each other.

The contact which results from an equality between the co-ordinates and the first differential coefficients, is called a contact of the *first order*, or a simple tangency (Art. 119). If the second differential coefficients are also equal to each other, it is called a contact of the *second order*. If the first three differential coefficients are respectively equal to each other, it is a contact of the *third order;* and if there are m differential coefficients respectively equal to each other, it is a contact of the m*th order*.

153. Let us now suppose that the second line is only given in species, and that values may be attributed at pleasure to the constants which enter its equation. We

shall then be able to establish between the first and second lines as many conditions as there are constants in the equation of the second line. If, for example, the equation of the second line contains two constants, two conditions can be established, viz.: an equality between the co-ordinates, and an equality between the first differential coefficients; this will give a contact of the first order.

If the equation of the second curve contains three constants, three conditions may be established, viz.: an equality between the co-ordinates, and an equality between the first and second differential coefficients. This will give a contact of the second order. If there are four constants, we can obtain a contact of the third order; and if there are $m+1$ constants, a contact of the mth order.

It is plain, that in each of the foregoing cases the highest order of contact is determined.

The line which has a higher order of contact with a given curve than can be found for any other line of the same species, is called an osculatrix.

Let it be required, for example, to find a straight line which shall be osculatory to a curve, at a given point of which the co-ordinates are x'', y''.

The equation of the right line is of the form

$$y = ax + b,$$

and it is required to find such values for the constants a and b as to cause the line to fulfil the conditions,

$$x = x'', \quad y = y'', \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy''}{dx''}.$$

By differentiating the equation of the line, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = a;$$

and since the line passes through the point of osculation

$$y - y'' = \frac{dy}{dx}(x - x'').$$

Substituting for $\frac{dy}{dx}$ its value $\frac{dy''}{dx''}$, we have

$$y - y'' = \frac{dy''}{dx''}(x - x''),$$

for the equation of the osculatrix.

In the equation of the circle

$$x''^2 + y''^2 = R^2,$$

we find $$\frac{dy''}{dx''} = -\frac{x''}{y''}$$

hence, the equation of the osculatrix of the first order, to the circle, is

$$y - y'' = -\frac{x''}{y''}(x - x''),$$

or by reducing $$yy'' + xx'' = R^2.$$

154. If α and β represent the co-ordinates of the centre of a circle, its equation will be of the form

$$(x - \alpha)^2 + (y - \beta)^2 = R^2.$$

If this equation be twice differentiated, we shall have,

$$(x - \alpha)\,dx + (y - \beta)\,dy = 0,$$

$$dx^2 + dy^2 + (y - \beta)\,d^2y = 0;$$

and by combining the three equations, we obtain,

$$y - \beta = -\frac{dx^2 + dy^2}{d^2y},$$

$$x - \alpha = \frac{dy}{dx}\left(\frac{dx^2 + dy^2}{d^2y}\right),$$

$$R = \pm \frac{(dx^2 + dy^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{dx\,d^2y}.$$

If it be now required to make this circle osculatory to a given curve, at a point of which the co-ordinates are x'', y'', we have only to substitute in the three last equations, the values of

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy''}{dx''}, \qquad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{d^2y''}{dx''^2},$$

deduced from the equation of the curve, and to suppose, at the same time, the co-ordinates x and y in the curve to become equal to those of x and y in the circle.

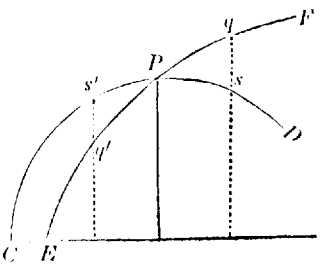
If we suppose x'', y'', to be general co-ordinates of the curve, the circle will move around the curve and become osculatory to it, at each of its points in succession.

155. If the circle CD be osculatory to the curve EF, at the point P, we shall have

$$qs = C\alpha + \frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \&c.,$$

for h positive; and

$$q's' = C\alpha - \frac{h^3}{1.2.3} + \&c.,$$



for h negative: hence, the two lines qs, $q's'$, have contrary signs. The curve, therefore, lies above the osculatory circle on one side of the point P, and below it on the other, and consequently, divides the osculatory circle at the point of osculation. Hence, also, the osculatory circle separates the tangent circles which lie without the curve from those which lie within it (Art. 151).

In every osculatrix of an even order the first term in the values of qs, $q's'$, will, in general, contain an uneven power of h; and hence the signs of the limits of their values will depend on that of h. The curve will therefore lie above the osculatrix on one side of the point P and below it on the other; and hence, *every osculatrix of an even order will, in general, be divided by the curve at the point of osculation.*

156. The first differential equation of Article 154,

$$(x - \alpha)dx + (y - \beta)dy = 0$$

may be placed under the form

$$y - \beta = -\frac{dx}{dy}(x - \alpha).$$

When the circle is made osculatory with the curve, the co-ordinates x and y become the co-ordinates of the curve, and the last equation represents a normal passing through the point whose co-ordinates are α and β (Art. 122). Hence, *the normal drawn through the point of osculation, will contain the centre of the osculatory circle*

157. It was shown in (Art. 155) that the osculatory circle is, in general, divided by the curve at the point of oscu-

lation. The position of the curves with respect to each other indicates this result.

For, the osculatory circle is always symmetrical with respect to the normal, while the curve is, in general, not symmetrical with respect to this line. If, however, the curve is symmetrical with respect to the normal, as is the case in lines of the second order when the normal coincides with an axis, the curve will not divide the osculatory circle at the point of osculation; and the condition which renders the second differential coefficients in the curve and circle equal to each other, will also render the third differential coefficients equal, and the contact will then be of the third order.

158. The radius of the osculatory circle

$$R = \pm \frac{(dx^2 + dy^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{dxd^2y}$$

is affected with the sign plus or minus, and it may be well to determine the circumstances under which each sign is to be used.

If we suppose the ordinate to be positive, we shall have (Art. 133)

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}, \quad \text{and consequently} \quad d^2y$$

negative when the curve is concave towards the axis of abscissas, and positive when it is convex. If then, we wish the radius of the osculatory circle to be positive for curves which are concave towards the axis of abscissas, we must employ the minus sign, in which case the radius will be negative for curves which are convex.

159. If the circumferences of two circles be described with different radii, and a tangent line be drawn to each, it is plain that the circumference which has the less radius will depart more rapidly from its tangent than the circumference which is described with the greater radius; and hence we say, that its *curvature is greater*. And generally, the curvature of any curve is said to be greater or less than that of another curve, according as its tendency to depart from its tangent is greater or less than that of the curve with which it is compared.

160. The curvature is the same at all the points of the same circumference, and also in all circumferences described with equal radii, since the tendency to depart from the tangent is the same. In different circumferences, the curvature is measured by the angle formed by two radii drawn through the extremities of an arc of a given length.

Let r and r' designate the radii of two circles, a the length of a given arc measured on the circumference of each; c the angle formed by the two radii drawn through the extremities of the arc in the first circle, and c' the angle formed by the corresponding radii of the second. We shall then have

$$2\pi r \ : \ a \ :: \ 360^\circ \ : \ c, \quad \text{hence,} \quad c = \frac{360^\circ a}{2\pi r};$$

also,

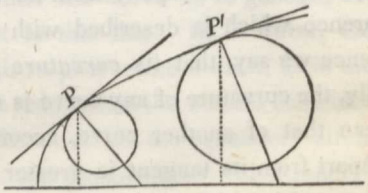
$$2\pi r' \ : \ a \ :: \ 360^\circ \ : \ c', \quad \text{hence,} \quad c' = \frac{360^\circ a}{2\pi r'};$$

and consequently

$$c \ : \ c' \ :: \ \frac{1}{r} \ : \ \frac{1}{r'},$$

that is, *the curvature in different circumferences varies inversely as the radii.*

161. The curvature of plane curves is measured by means of the osculatory circle.



If we assume two points P and P', either on the same or on different curves, and find the radii r and r' of the circles which are osculatory at these points, then

$$\text{curvature at } P \;:\; \text{curvature at } P' \;::\; \frac{1}{r} \;:\; \frac{1}{r'};$$

that is, *the curvature at different points varies inversely as the radius of the osculatory circle.*

The radius of the osculatory circle is called *the radius of curvature.*

162. Let us now determine the value of the radius of curvature for lines of the second order.

The general equation of these lines (An. Geom. Bk. VI, Prop. XII, Sch. 3), is

$$y^2 = mx + nx^2,$$

which gives,

$$dy = \frac{(m+2nx)\,dx}{2y}, \quad dx^2 + dy^2 = \frac{[4y^2+(m+2nx)^2]\,dx^2}{4y^2},$$

$$d^2y = \frac{2ny\,dx^2-(m+2nx)\,dx\,dy}{2y^2} = \frac{[4ny^2-(m+2nx)^2]\,dx^2}{4y^3}.$$

Substituting these values in the equation

$$R = -\frac{(dx^2 + dy^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{dx\,d^2y},$$

we obtain

$$R = \frac{[4(mx + nx^2) + (m + 2nx)^2]^{\frac{3}{2}}}{2m^2},$$

which is the general value of the radius of curvature in lines of the second order, for any abscissa x.

163. If we make $x = 0$, we have

$$R = \frac{1}{2}m = \frac{B^2}{A};$$

that is, in lines of the second order, *the radius of curvature at the vertex of the transverse axis is equal to half the parameter of that axis.*

If be required to find the value of the radius of curvature at the extremity of the conjugate axis of an ellipse, we make (An. Geom. Bk. VIII, Prop. XXI, Sch. 3),

$$m = \frac{2B^2}{A}, \qquad n = -\frac{B^2}{A^2}, \qquad \text{and} \qquad x = A,$$

which gives, after reducing,

$$R = \frac{A^2}{B};$$

hence, *the radius of curvature at the vertex of the conjugate axis of an ellipse is equal to half the parameter of that axis.*

In the case of the parabola, in which $n = 0$, the general value of the radius of curvature becomes

$$R = \frac{(m^2 + 4mx)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{2m^2}.$$

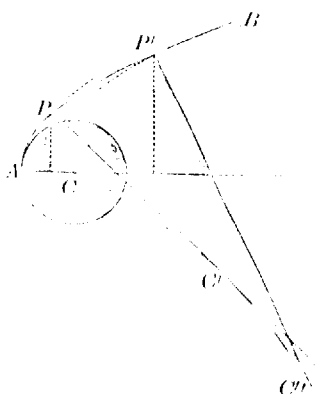
161. If we compare the value of the radius of curvature with that of the normal line found in (Art. 118), we shall have

$$R = \frac{(\text{normal})^3}{\frac{1}{4}m^2};$$

that is, *the radius of curvature at any point is equal to the cube of the normal divided by half the parameter squared*: and hence, *the radii of curvature at different points of the same curve are to each other as the cubes of the corresponding normals.*

Of the Evolutes of Curves.

165. If we suppose a circle to move along any curve, as $APP'B$, and to be osculatory to it at each of its points, in succession, the curve AB is called the *involute* curve, and the curve $CC'C''$, described by the centre of the osculatory circle, is called the *evolute* curve.



166. The co-ordinates of the centre of the osculatory circle, which have been represented by α and β, are constant for given values of the co-ordinates x and y of the

involute curve, but they become variable when we pass from one point of the involute curve to another.

167. We have already seen that the osculatory circle is characterized by the equations (Art. 154)

$$(x-\alpha)^2+(y-\beta)^2=R^2, \qquad (1)$$

$$(x-\alpha)dx+(y-\beta)dy=0, \quad (2)$$

$$dx^2+dy^2+(y-\beta)d^2y=0. \quad (3)$$

If it be required to find the relations between the co-ordinates of the involute and the co-ordinates of the evolute curves, we must differentiate equations (1) and (2) under the supposition that α and β, as well as x and y, are variables. We shall then have

$$(x-\alpha)dx+(y-\beta)dy-(x-\alpha)d\alpha-(y-\beta)d\beta=RdR,$$

$$dx^2+dy^2+(y-\beta)d^2y-d\alpha dx-d\beta dy=0.$$

Combining these with equations (2) and (3), we obtain

$$-(y-\beta)d\beta-(x-\alpha)d\alpha=RdR, \quad (4)$$

$$-d\alpha dx-d\beta dy=0.$$

The last equation gives

$$\frac{d\beta}{d\alpha}=-\frac{dx}{dy}. \qquad (5)$$

But equation (2) may be placed under the form

$$y-\beta=-\frac{dx}{dy}(x-\alpha),$$

which represents a normal to the involute (Art. 122), and which becomes, by substituting for $-\frac{dx}{dy}$ its value $\frac{d\beta}{d\alpha}$,

$$y - \beta = \frac{d\beta}{d\alpha}(x - \alpha), \quad (6)$$

or $$\beta - y = \frac{d\beta}{d\alpha}(\alpha - x)$$

This last is the equation of a straight line passing through a point whose co-ordinates are x and y, and tangent to the curve whose general co-ordinates are α and β; hence, *a normal line to the involute curve is tangent to the evolute.*

168. It is now proposed to show, that the radius of curvature and the evolute curve have equal differentials.

Combining equations (2) and (5) we obtain

$$(x - \alpha) = (y - \beta)\frac{d\alpha}{d\beta}, \quad (7)$$

or by squaring both members,

$$(x - \alpha)^2 = (y - \beta)^2 \frac{d\alpha^2}{d\beta^2};$$

combining this last with equation (1) we have

$$\frac{(d\alpha^2 + d\beta^2)}{d\beta^2}(y - \beta)^2 = R^2. \quad (8)$$

Combining equations (4) and (7), we have

$$-(y - \beta)d\beta - (y - \beta)\frac{d\alpha^2}{d\beta} = R\,dR,$$

or $$-\frac{(d\alpha^2 + d\beta^2)}{d\beta}(y - \beta) = R\,dR;$$

or by squaring both members

$$\frac{(d\alpha^2 + d\beta^2)^2}{d\beta^2}(y-\beta)^2 = R^2(dR)^2.$$

Dividing this last by equation (8), member by member, we have

$$(dR)^2 = d\alpha^2 + d\beta^2$$

or

$$dR = \sqrt{d\alpha^2 + d\beta^2}.$$

But if s represents the arc of the evolute curve, of which the co-ordinates are α and β, we shall have (Art. 128),

$$ds = \sqrt{d\alpha^2 + d\beta^2};$$

hence,

$$dR = ds;$$

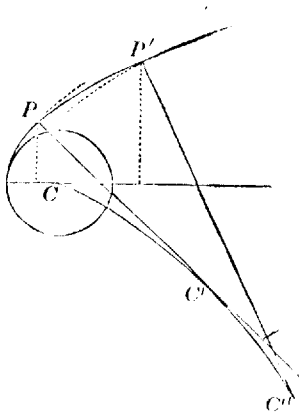
that is, *the differential of the radius of curvature is equal to the differential of the arc of the evolute.*

169. It does not follow, however, from the last equation, that the radius of curvature is equal to the arc of the evolute curve, but only that one of them is equal to the other plus or minus a constant (Art. 22). Hence,

$$R = s + a$$

is the form of the equation which expresses the relation between them.

If we determine the radii of curvature at two points of the involute, as P and P', we shall have, for the first,



$$R = s + a,$$

and for the second

$$R' = s' + a;$$

hence,

$$R' - R = s' - s = C'C'';$$

and hence, *the difference between the radii of curvature at any two points of the involute is equal to the part of the evolute curve intercepted between them.*

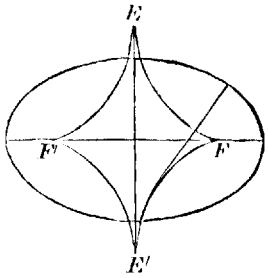
170. The value of the constant a will depend on the position of the point from which the arc of the evolute curve is estimated.

If, for example, we take the radius of curvature for lines of the second order, and estimate the arc of the evolute curve from the point at which it meets the axis, the value of s will be 0 when $R = \frac{1}{2}m$ (Art. 163): hence we shall have

$$\frac{1}{2}m = 0 + a \quad \text{or} \quad a = \frac{1}{2}m;$$

and for any other point of the curve

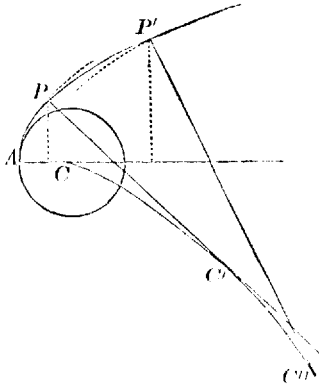
$$R = s + \frac{1}{2}m.$$



Either of the evolutes, FE, FE', $F'E'$, or $F'E$, corresponding to one quarter of the ellipse, is equal to (Art. 169)

$$\frac{A^2}{B} - \frac{B^2}{A}.$$

171. The evolute curve takes its name from the connexion which it has with the corresponding involute.



Let $CC'C''$ be an evolute curve. At C draw a tangent AC, and make it equal to the constant a in the equation

$$R = s + a.$$

Wrap a thread $ACC'C''$ around the curve, and fasten it at any point, as C''.

Then, if we begin at A, and unwrap or *evolve* the thread, it will take the positions PC', $P'C''$, &c., and the point A will describe the involute APP': for

$$PC' - AC = CC' \quad \text{and} \quad P'C'' - AC = CC'C'', \text{ \&c. . . .}$$

172. The equation of the evolute may be readily found by combining the equations

$$y - \beta = -\frac{dx^2 + dy^2}{d^2y}, \qquad x - \alpha = \frac{dy(dx^2 + dy^2)}{dxd^2y},$$

with the equation of the involute curve.

1st. Find, from the equation of the involute, the values of

$$\frac{dy}{dx} \quad \text{and} \quad d^2y,$$

and substitute them in the two last equations, and there will be obtained two new equations involving α, β, x and y.

2d. Combine these equations with the equation of the involute, and eliminate x and y: the resulting equation will contain α, β, and constants, and will be the equation of the evolute curve.

173. Let us take, as an example, the common parabola of which the equation is

$$y^2 = mx.$$

We shall then have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{m}{2y}, \qquad d^2y = -\frac{m^2dx^2}{4y^3},$$

and hence

$$y - \beta = \frac{4y^3}{m^2}\left(\frac{4y^2 + m^2}{4y^2}\right) = \frac{4y^3 + m^2y}{m^2} = \frac{4y^3}{m^2} + y;$$

and by observing that the value of $x - \alpha$ is equal to that of $y - \beta$ multiplied by $-\frac{dy}{dx}$, we have

$$x - \alpha = -\frac{4y^2 + m^2}{2m};$$

hence we have,

$$-\beta = \frac{4y^3}{m^2} \quad \text{and} \quad x - \alpha = -\frac{2y^2}{m} - \frac{m}{2};$$

substituting for y its value in the equation of the involute

$$y = m^{\frac{1}{2}} x^{\frac{1}{2}},$$

we obtain

$$-\beta = \frac{4x^{\frac{3}{2}}}{m^{\frac{1}{2}}}, \qquad x - \alpha = -2x - \frac{m}{2};$$

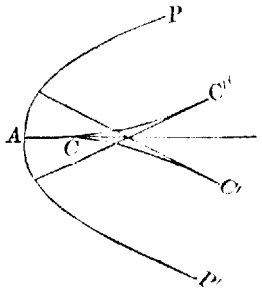
and by eliminating x, we have

$$\beta^2 = \frac{16}{27m}\left(\alpha - \frac{1}{2}m\right)^3,$$

which is the equation of the evolute.

If we make $\beta = 0$, we have

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{2}m;$$



and hence, the evolute meets the axis of abscissas at a distance from the origin equal to half the parameter. If the origin of co-ordinates be transferred from A to this point, we shall have

$$\alpha' = \alpha - \frac{1}{2}m,$$

and consequently

$$\beta^2 = \frac{16}{27m}\alpha'^3.$$

The equation of the curve shows that it is symmetrical with respect to the axis of abscissas, and that it does not extend in the direction of the negative values of α'. The evolute CC' corresponds to the part AP of the involute, and CC'' to the part AP'.

CHAPTER VIII.

Of Transcendental Curves.—Of Tangent Planes and Normal Lines to Surfaces.

174. Curves may be divided into two general classes:

1st. Those whose equations are purely algebraic; and

2dly. Those whose equations involve transcendental quantities.

The first class are called algebraic curves, and the second, *transcendental curves*.

The properties of the first class having been already examined, it only remains to discuss the properties of the transcendental curves.

Of the Logarithmic Curve.

175. The logarithmic curve takes its name from the property that, when referred to rectangular axes, one of the co-ordinates is equal to the logarithm of the other.

If we suppose the logarithms to be estimated in parallels to the axis of Y, and the corresponding numbers to be laid off on the axis of abscissas, the equation of the curve will be

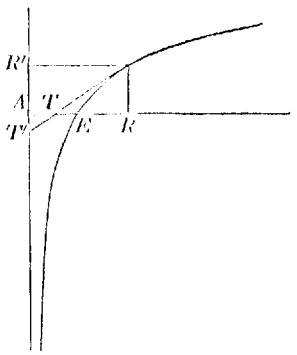
$$y = lx.$$

176. If we designate the base of a system of logarithms by a, we shall have, (Alg. Art. 241)

$$a^y = x;$$

and if we change the value of the base a to a', we shall have

$$a'^y = x.$$



It is plain, that the same value of x, in the two equations, will give different values of y, and hence, *every system of logarithms will give a different logarithmic curve.*

If we make $y = 0$, we shall have (Alg. Art. 240) $x = 1$; and this relation being independent of the base of the system of logarithms, it follows, that *every logarithmic curve will intersect the axis of numbers at a distance from the origin equal to unity.*

The equation

$$a^y = x,$$

will enable us to describe the curve by points, even without the aid of a table of logarithms. For, if we make

$$y = 0, \qquad y = \frac{1}{2}, \qquad y = \frac{3}{2}, \qquad y = \frac{1}{4}, \quad \&c.,$$

we shall find, for the corresponding values of x,

$$x = 1, \qquad x = \sqrt{a}, \qquad x = a\sqrt{a}, \qquad x = \sqrt[4]{a} \quad \&c.$$

177. If we suppose the base of the system of logarithms to be greater than unity, the logarithms of all numbers less

than unity will be negative (Alg. Art. 239); and therefore, the values of y corresponding to the abscissas, between the limits $x = 0$ and $x = AE = 1$, will be negative. Hence, these ordinates are laid off below the axis of abscissas.

When $x = 0$, y will be infinite and negative (Alg. Art. 247). If we make x negative, the conditions of the equation cannot be fulfilled; and hence, the curve does not extend on the side of the negative abscissas.

178. Let us resume the equation of the curve

$$y = lx.$$

If we represent the modulus of the system of logarithms by A, and differentiate, we obtain (Art. 56),

$$dy = A\frac{dx}{x},$$

or

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{A}{x}.$$

But $\frac{dy}{dx}$ represents the tangent of the angle which the tangent line forms with the axis of abscissas: hence, the tangent will be parallel to the axis of abscissas when $x = \infty$, and perpendicular to it when $x = 0$.

But when $x = 0$, $y = -\infty$; hence, the axis of ordinates is an asymptote to the curve. The tangent which is parallel to the axis of X is not an asymptote: for when $x = \infty$, we also have $y = \infty$.

179. The most remarkable property of this curve belongs to its sub-tangent $T'R'$, estimated on the axis of logarithms. We have found, for the sub-tangent, on the axis of X (Art. 114),

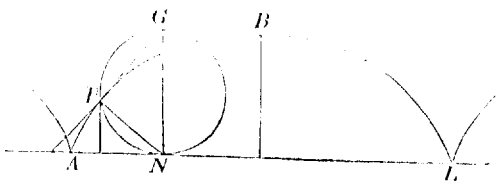
$$TR = \frac{dx}{dy} y,$$

and by simply changing the axes, we have

$$T'R' = \frac{dy}{dx} x = A :$$

hence, *the sub-tangent is equal to the modulus of the system of logarithms from which the curve is constructed.* In the Naperian system $M = 1$, and hence the sub-tangent will be equal to $1 = AE$.

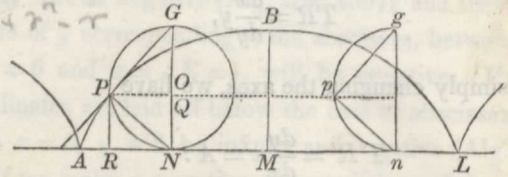
Of the Cycloid.



180. If a circle NPG be rolled along a straight line AL, any point of the circumference will describe a curve, which is called a *cycloid*. The circle NPG is called the *generating circle*, and P the *generating point*.

It is plain, that in each revolution of the generating circle an equal curve will be described; and hence, it will only be necessary to examine the properties of the curve $APBL$, described in one revolution of the generating circle. We shall therefore refer only to this part when speaking of the cycloid.

181. If we suppose the point P to be on the line AL at A, it will be found at some point, as L, after all the



points of the circumference shall have been brought in contact with the line AL. The line AL will be equal to the circumference of the generating circle, and is called the *base of the cycloid.* The line BM, drawn perpendicular to the base at the middle point, is equal to the diameter of the generating circle, and is called the *axis of the cycloid.*

182. To find the equation of the cycloid, let us assume the point A as the origin of co-ordinates, and let us suppose that the generating point has described the arc AP. If N designates the point at which the generating circle touches the base, AN will be equal to the arc NP.

Through N draw the diameter NG, which will be perpendicular to the base. Through P draw PR perpendicular to the base, and PQ parallel to it. Then, $PR=NQ$ will be the versed-sine, and PQ the sine of the arc NP.

Let us make

$$ON=r, \qquad AR=x, \qquad PR=NQ=y,$$

we shall then have

$$PQ=\sqrt{2ry-y^2}, \qquad x=AN-RN=\text{arc}\,NP-PQ:$$

hence, the transcendental equation is

$$x=\text{ver-sin}^{-1}y-\sqrt{2ry-y^2}.$$

183. The properties of the cycloid are, however, most easily deduced from its differential equation, which is readily found by differentiating both members of the transcendental equation.

We have (Art. 71),

$$d(\text{ver-sin}^{-1}y) = \frac{rdy}{\sqrt{2ry-y^2}},$$

$$d\left(-\sqrt{2ry-y^2}\right) = -\frac{rdy-ydy}{\sqrt{2ry-y^2}};$$

hence,

$$dx = \frac{rdy}{\sqrt{2ry-y^2}} - \frac{rdy-ydy}{\sqrt{2ry-y^2}},$$

or

$$dx = \frac{ydy}{\sqrt{2ry-y^2}};$$

which is the differential equation of the cycloid.

184. If we substitute in the general equations of (Arts. 114, 115, 116, 117), the values of dx, dy, deduced from the differential equation of the cycloid, we shall obtain the values of the normal, sub-normal, tangent, and sub-tangent. They are,

$$\text{normal } PN = \sqrt{2ry}, \qquad \text{sub-normal } RN = \sqrt{2ry-y^2},$$

$$\text{tangent } PT = \frac{y\sqrt{2ry}}{\sqrt{2ry-y^2}}, \qquad \text{sub-tangent } TR = \frac{y^2}{\sqrt{2ry-y^2}}.$$

These values are easily constructed, in consequence of their connexion with the parts of the generating circle.

The sub-normal RN, for example, is equal to PQ of the generating circle, since each is equal to $\sqrt{2ry-y^2}$: hence, the normal PN and the diameter GN intersect the base of the cycloid at the same point.

Now, since the tangent to the cycloid at the point P is perpendicular to the normal, it must coincide with the chord PG of the generating circle.

If, therefore, it be required to draw a normal or a tangent to the cycloid, at any point as P, draw any line, as ng, perpendicular to the base AL, and make it equal to the diameter of the generating circle. On ng describe a semi-circumference, and through P draw a parallel to the base of the cycloid. Through p, where the parallel cuts the semi-circumference, draw the supplementary chords pn, pg, and then draw through P the parallels PN, PG, and PN will be a normal, and PG a tangent to the cycloid at the point P.

185. Let us resume the differential equation of the cycloid

$$dx = \frac{ydy}{\sqrt{2ry - y^2}},$$

which may be put under the form

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\sqrt{2ry - y^2}}{y} = \sqrt{\frac{2r}{y} - 1}.$$

If we make $y = 0$, we shall have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \infty;$$

and if we make $y = 2r$, we shall have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 0:$$

hence, the tangent lines drawn to the cycloid at the points where the curve meets the base, are perpendicular to the base; and the tangent drawn through the extremity of the greatest ordinate, is parallel to the base.

186. If we differentiate the equation

$$dx = \frac{ydy}{\sqrt{2ry - y^2}},$$

regarding dx as constant, we obtain

$$0 = (yd^2y + dy^2)\sqrt{2ry - y^2} - \frac{ydy(rdy - ydy)}{\sqrt{2ry - y^2}};$$

or by reducing and dividing by y,

$$0 = (2ry - y^2)d^2y + rdy^2,$$

whence we obtain

$$d^2y = -\frac{rdy^2}{2ry - y^2};$$

and hence the cycloid is concave towards the axis of abscissas (Art. 133).

187. To find the evolute of the cycloid, let us first substitute in the general value of

$$R = -\frac{(dx^2 + dy^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{dxd^2y},$$

the value of d^2y found in the last article: we shall then have

$$R = 2^{\frac{3}{2}}(ry)^{\frac{1}{2}} = 2\sqrt{2ry};$$

hence, the radius of curvature corresponding to the extremity of any ordinate y, is equal to double the normal.

The radius of curvature is 0 when $y = 0$, and equal to twice the diameter of the generating circle for $y = 2r$: hence, the length of the evolute curve from A to A' is equal to twice the diameter of the generating circle.

Substituting the value of d^2y in the values of $y - \beta$, $x - \alpha$ (Art. 172), we obtain

$$y - \beta = 2y, \qquad x - \alpha = -2\sqrt{2ry - y^2};$$

hence we have

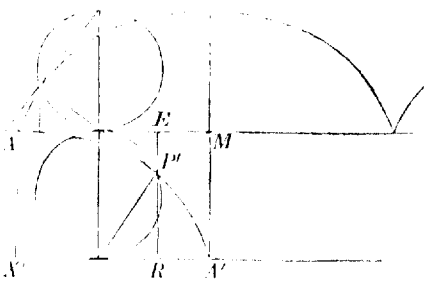
$$y = -\beta, \qquad x = \alpha - 2\sqrt{-2r\beta - \beta^2}.$$

Substituting these values of y and x in the transcendental equation of the cycloid, we have

$$\alpha = \text{ver-sin}^{-1} - \beta + \sqrt{-2r\beta - \beta^2},$$

which is the transcendental equation of the evolute, referred to the primitive origin and the primitive axes.

Let us now transfer the origin of co-ordinates to the point A', and change at the same time the direction of the positive abscissas: that is, instead of estimating them from the left to the right, we will estimate them from the right to the left. Let us designate the co-ordinates of the evolute, referred to the new axes $A'M$, $A'N'$, by α' and β'.



Since $A'X' = AM$, the semi-circumference of the generating circle, which is equal to $r\pi$, we shall have, for the abscissa $A'R'$ of any point P',

$$A'R' = \alpha' = r\pi - \alpha, \quad \text{hence,} \quad \alpha = r\pi - \alpha';$$

and for the ordinate, we shall have

$$R'P' = \beta' = R'E - P'E = 2r - (-\beta) = 2r + \beta,$$

hence, $\beta = -2r + \beta'$, or $-\beta = 2r - \beta'$.

Substituting these values of α and β in the transcendental equation of the evolute, we obtain

$$r\pi - \alpha' = \text{ver-sin}^{-1}(2r - \beta') + \sqrt{2r\beta' - \beta'^2},$$

or $$\alpha' = r\pi - \text{ver-sin}^{-1}(2r - \beta') - \sqrt{2r\beta' - \beta'^2}.$$

But the arc whose versed-sine is $2r - \beta'$, is the supplement of the arc whose versed-sine is β', hence

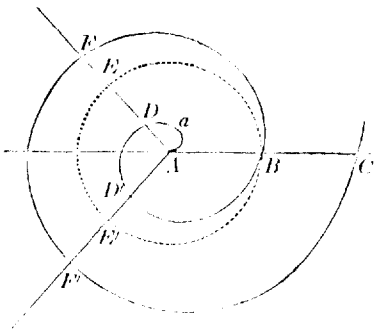
$$\alpha' = \text{ver-sin}^{-1}\beta' - \sqrt{2r\beta' - \beta'^2},$$

which is the equation of the evolute referred to the new origin and new axes.

But this equation is of the same form, and involves the same constants as that of the involute: hence, the evolute and involute are equal curves.

Of Spirals.

188. *A spiral* is a curve described by a point which moves along a right line, according to any law whatever, the line having at the same time a uniform angular motion.



Let ABC be a straight line which is to be turned uniformly around the point A. When the motion of the line begins, let us suppose a point to move from A along the line in the direction ABC. When the line takes the position ADE the point will have moved along it to some point as D, and will have described the arc AaD of the spiral. When the line takes the position ADE' the point will have described the curve $AaDD'$, and when the line shall have completed an entire revolution the point will have described the curve $AaDD'B$.

The point A, about which the right line moves, is called the *pole*; the distances AD, AD', AB, are called *radius-vectors*, and if the revolutions of the radius-vector are continued, the generating point will describe an indefinite spiral. The parts $AaDD'B$, $BFE''C$, described in each revolution, are called *spires*.

189. If with the pole as a centre, and AB, the distance passed over by the generating point in the direction of the radius-vector during the first revolution, as a radius, we describe the circumference BEE', the angular motion of the radius-vector about the pole A, may be measured by the arcs of this circle, estimated from B.

If we designate the radius-vector by u, and the measuring arc, estimated from B, by t, the relation between u

and t, may in general be expressed by the equation

$$u = at^n,$$

in which n depends on the *law* according to which the generating point moves along the radius-vector, and a on the relation which exists between a given value of u and the corresponding value of t.

190. When n is positive the spirals represented by the equation

$$u = at^n,$$

will pass through the pole A. For, if we make $t = 0$, we shall have $u = 0$.

But if n is negative, the equation will become

$$u = at^{-n}, \qquad \text{or} \qquad u = \frac{a}{t^n},$$

in which we shall have

$$u = \infty \qquad \text{for} \qquad t = 0,$$

and

$$u = 0 \qquad \text{for} \qquad t = \infty;$$

hence, in this class of spirals, the first position of the generating point is at an infinite distance from the pole: the point will then approach the pole as the radius-vector revolves, and will only reach it after an infinite number of revolutions.

191. If we make $n = 1$, the equation of the spiral becomes

$$u = at.$$

If we designate two different radius-vectors by u' and u'', and the corresponding arcs by t' and t'', we shall have

$$u' = at', \qquad \text{and} \qquad u'' = at'',$$

and consequently

$$u' : u'' :: t' : t'';$$

that is, *the radius-vectors are proportional to the measuring arcs, estimated from the point B.* This spiral is called, the spiral of Archimedes.

192. If we represent by unity the distance which the generating point moves along the radius-vector, during one revolution, the equation

$$u = at,$$

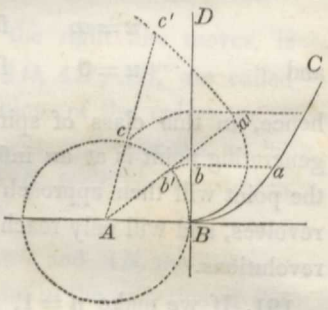
will become

$$1 = at, \qquad \text{or} \qquad 1 \times \frac{1}{a} = t.$$

But since t is the circumference of a circle whose radius is unity, we shall have

$$\frac{1}{a} = 2\pi, \qquad \text{and consequently,} \qquad a = \frac{1}{2\pi}.$$

193. If the axis BD, of a semi-parabola BCD, be wrapped around the circumference of a circle of a given radius r, any abscissa, as Bb, will coincide with an equal arc Bb', and any ordinate as ba, will take the direction of the normal $Ab'a'$. The curve $Ba'c'$, described through the extremities of the ordinates of the parabola, is called the *parabolic spiral.*



The equation of this spiral is readily found, by observing that the squares of the lines $b'a'$, $c\,c'$, &c., are proportional to the abscissas or arcs Bb', Bc.

If we designate the distances, estimated from the pole A, by u, we shall have $b'a' = u - r$: hence,

$$(u-r)^2 = 2pt,$$

is the equation of the parabolic spiral.

If we suppose $r = 0$, the equation becomes

$$u^2 = 2pt.$$

If we make $n = -1$, the general equation of spirals becomes

$$u = at^{-1}, \qquad \text{or} \qquad ut = a.$$

This spiral is called the *hyperbolic spiral*, because of the analogy which its equation bears to that of the hyperbola, when referred to its asymptotes.

194. The relation between u and t is entirely arbitrary, and besides the relations expressed by the equation

$$u = at^n,$$

we may, if we please, make

$$t = \log u.$$

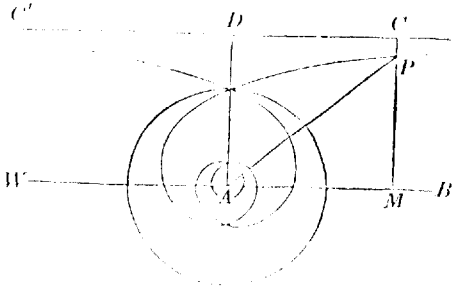
The spiral described by the extremity of the radius-vector when this relation subsists, is called the *logarithmic spiral.*

195. If in the equation of the hyperbolic spiral, we make successively,

$$t = 1, \quad = \frac{1}{2}, \quad = \frac{1}{3}, \quad = \frac{1}{4}, \text{ \&c.,}$$

we shall have the corresponding values,

$$u = a, \quad u = 2a, \quad u = 3a, \quad u = 4a, \text{ \&c.}$$



Through the pole A draw AD perpendicular to AB, and make it equal to a: then through D draw a parallel to AB. From any point of the spiral as P draw PM perpendicular to AB, we shall then have

$$PM = u \sin MAP = u \sin t.$$

If we substitute for u its value $\frac{a}{t}$, we shall have

$$PM = a \frac{\sin t}{t}.$$

Now as the arc t diminishes, the ratio of $\frac{\sin t}{t}$ will approach to unity, and the value of the ordinate PM will approach to a or CM: hence, the line DC approaches the curve and becomes tangent to it when $t = 0$. But when $t = 0$, $u = \infty$; hence, the line DC is an asymptote of the curve.

196. The arc which measures the angular motion of the radius-vector has been estimated from the right to the left, and the value of t regarded as positive. If we revolve the radius-vector in a contrary direction, the measuring arc will be estimated from left to right, the sign of t will be changed to negative and a similar spiral will be described. The line DC' is an asymptote to the hyperbolic spiral, corresponding to the negative value of t.

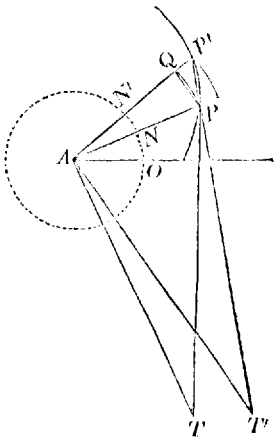
197. Let us now find a general value for the subtangent of the spirals. *The subtangent is the projection of the tangent on a line drawn through the pole and perpendicular to the radius-vector passing through the point of contact.*

The equation of the spirals may be written under the form

$$u = F(t),$$

in which we may suppose t the independent variable, and its first differential constant.

Let $AO = 1$ be the radius of the measuring circle, PT a tangent to the spiral at the point P, and AT drawn perpendicular to the radius-vector AP, the subtangent.



Take any other point of the spiral as P', and draw AP'. Through A draw AT' perpendicular to AP'; draw the secant $T'PP'$. About the centre A describe the arc PQ, and draw the chord PQ.

From the similar triangles QPP', $AT'P'$, we have

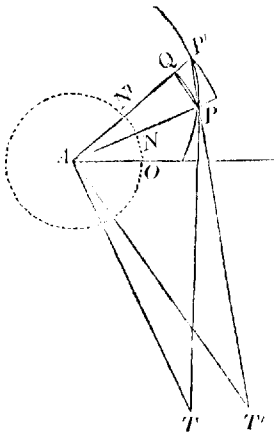
$$PQ : QP' :: AT' : AP';$$

hence,

$$\frac{QP'}{PQ} = \frac{AP'}{AT'}.$$

But when we pass to the limit, by supposing the point P' to coincide with P, the secant $T'PP'$ will become the tangent PT, and AT' will become the subtangent AT.

But under this supposition the arc NN' will become equal to dt, the arc PQ to the chord PQ (Art. 128), AP' to u, and the line QP' to du.



To find the value of the arc PQ, we have

$$1 : NN' :: AP : \text{arc } PQ;$$

hence,

$$1 : dt :: u : \text{arc } PQ,$$

and $$PQ = udt.$$

Substituting these values, and passing to the limit, we have

$$\frac{du}{udt} = \frac{u}{AT};$$

hence, we have the subtangent

$$AT = \frac{u^2 dt}{du}.$$

198. If we find the value of u^2 and du from the general equation of the spirals

$$u = at^n,$$

we shall have

$$AT = \frac{a}{n} t^{n+1}.$$

In the spiral of Archimedes, we have

$$n = 1, \quad \text{and} \quad a = \frac{1}{2\pi};$$

hence,

$$AT = \frac{t^2}{2\pi}.$$

If now we make $t = 2\pi =$ circumference of the measuring circle, we shall have

$$AT = 2\pi = \text{circumference of measuring circle.}$$

After m revolutions, we shall have

$$t = 2m\pi,$$

and consequently,

$$AT = 2m^2\pi = m \cdot 2m\pi;$$

that is, *the subtangent, after* m *revolutions, is equal to* m *times the circumference of the circle described with the radius-vector.* This property was discovered by Archimedes.

199. In the hyperbolic spiral $n = -1$, and the value of the subtangent becomes

$$AT = -a;$$

that is, the subtangent is constant in the hyperbolic spiral.

200. It may be remarked, that

$$\frac{AT}{AP} = \frac{udt}{du}$$

expresses the tangent of the angle which the tangent makes with the radius-vector.

In the logarithmic spiral, of which the equation is

$$t = \log u,$$

we have

$$dt = A\frac{du}{u};$$

hence,

$$\frac{AT}{AP} = \frac{udt}{du} = A;$$

that is, in the logarithmic spiral, the angle formed by the tangent and the radius-vector passing through the point of contact, is constant; and the tangent of the angle is equal to the modulus of the system of logarithms. If t is the Naperian logarithm of u, the angle will be equal to 45°.

201. The value of the tangent in the spirals is

$$PT = \sqrt{AP^2 + AT^2} = u\sqrt{1 + \frac{u^2dt^2}{du^2}}.$$

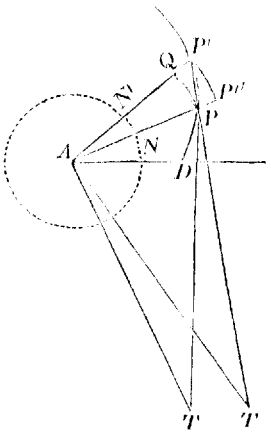
202. To find the differential of the arc, which we will represent by z, we have

$$PP' = \sqrt{QP'^2 + QP^2};$$

or, by substituting for QP' and PQ their values, and passing to the limit, we have

$$dz = \sqrt{du^2 + u^2dt^2}.$$

203. The differential of the area ADP when referred to the polar co-ordinates, is not an elementary rectangle as when referred to rectangular axes, but is the elementary sector APP'.



The limit of the ratio of the sector APP' with the arc NN', will be the same as that of either of the sectors APQ, $AP''P'$ between which it is contained, with the same arc NN'. Hence, if we designate the area by s, and pass to the limit, we shall have

$$\frac{ds}{dt} = \frac{AP \times PQ}{2NN'} = \frac{u^2}{2} \quad \text{or} \quad ds = \frac{u^2 dt}{2};$$

which is the differential of the area of any segment of a spiral.

Of Tangent Planes and Normal Lines to Surfaces.

204. Let $$u = F(x, y, z) = 0,$$

be the equation of a surface.

If through any point of the surface two planes be passed intersecting the surface in two curves, and two straight lines be drawn respectively tangent to each of the curves, at their common point, the plane of these tangents will be tangent to the surface.

205. Let us designate the co-ordinates of the point at which the plane is to be tangent by x'', y'', z''.

Through this point let a plane be passed parallel to the co-ordinate plane YZ. This plane will intersect the surface in a curve. The equations of a straight line tangent to this curve, at the point whose co-ordinates are x'', y'', z'', are

$$x - x'' = a'', \qquad y - y'' = \frac{dy}{dz}(z - z'');$$

the first equation represents the projection of the tangent on the co-ordinate plane ZX, and the second its projection on the co-ordinate plane YZ (An. Geom. Bk. IX. Art. 70).

Through the same point let a plane be passed parallel to the co-ordinate plane ZX, and we shall have for the equations of a tangent to the curve

$$y - y'' = b'', \qquad x - x'' = \frac{dx}{dz}(z - z'')$$

The coefficient $\frac{dy}{dz}$ represents the tangent of the angle which the projection of the first tangent on the co-ordinate plane YZ makes with the axis of Z; and the coefficient $\frac{dx}{dz}$ represents the tangent of the angle which the projection of the second tangent on the plane ZX makes with the axis of Z (An. Geom. Bk. VIII, Prop. II).

But these coefficients may be expressed in functions of the surface and the co-ordinates of its points. For, we have

$$u = F(x, y, z) = 0,$$

and if we suppose x constant, we shall have (Art. 87)

$$du = \frac{du}{dy}dy + \frac{du}{dz}dz = 0;$$

hence,
$$\frac{dy}{dz} = -\frac{\frac{du}{dz}}{\frac{du}{dy}};$$

and if we suppose y constant, we shall find, in a similar manner,

$$\frac{dx}{dz} = -\frac{\frac{du}{dz}}{\frac{du}{dx}};$$

hence, the equation of the projection of the first tangent on the plane of YZ becomes

$$y - y'' = -\frac{\frac{du}{dz}}{\frac{du}{dy}}(z - z'');$$

and the equation of the projection of the second tangent on the plane of ZX is

$$x - x'' = -\frac{\frac{du}{dz}}{\frac{du}{dx}}(z - z'').$$

The equation of a plane passing through the point whose co-ordinates are x'', y'', z'' is of the form

$$A(x - x'') + B(y - y'') + C(z - z'') = 0,$$

in which $-\frac{C}{B}$ will represent the tangent of the angle which the trace on the co-ordinate plane YZ makes with the axis of Z, and $-\frac{C}{A}$ the tangent of the angle which the trace on the plane of ZX makes with the axis of Z.

But since the tangents are respectively parallel to the co-ordinate planes YZ, ZX, their projections will be parallel to the traces of the tangent plane: therefore,

$$\frac{C}{B} = -\frac{\frac{du}{dz}}{\frac{du}{dy}}, \quad \text{hence,} \quad B = -\frac{\frac{du}{dy}}{\frac{du}{dz}} C;$$

$$\frac{C}{A} = -\frac{\frac{du}{dz}}{\frac{du}{dx}}, \quad \text{hence,} \quad A = -\frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{\frac{du}{dz}} C.$$

Substituting these values of B and A in the equation of the plane, and reducing, we find

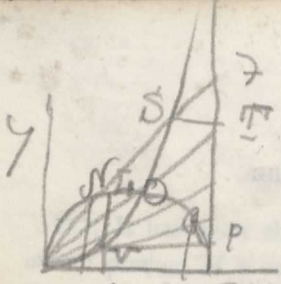
$$(z + z'')\frac{du}{dz} - (x + x'')\frac{du}{dx} + (y - y'')\frac{du}{dy} = 0,$$

which is the equation of a tangent plane to a surface at a point of which the co-ordinates are x'', y'', z''. If we neglect the signs of the constants A, B, C, which enter into the equation of the plane, the equation may be written under the form

$$(z - z'')\frac{du}{dz} + (x - x'')\frac{du}{dx} + (y - y'')\frac{du}{dy} = 0.$$

206. A normal line to the surface being perpendicular to the tangent plane at the point of contact, its equations will be of the form

$$x - x'' = \frac{\frac{du}{dx}}{\frac{du}{dz}}(z - z''), \qquad y - y = \frac{\frac{du}{dy}}{\frac{du}{dz}}(z - z''),$$



ELEMENTS

OF THE

INTEGRAL CALCULUS.

Integration of Differential Monomials.

207. The Differential Calculus explains the method of finding the differential of a given function. The Integral Calculus is the reverse of this. It explains the method of finding the function which corresponds to a given differential.

The rules for the differentiation of functions are explicit and direct. Those for determining the integral, or function, from the differential expression, are less direct and are deduced by reversing the process by which we pass from the function to the differential.

208. Let it be required, as a first example, to integrate the expression.

$$x^m dx.$$

We have found (Art. 32), that

$$d(x^{m+1}) = (m+1)x^m dx,$$

whence,
$$x^m dx = \frac{dx^{m+1}}{m+1} = d\left(\frac{x^{m+1}}{m+1}\right),$$

and consequently $$\frac{x^{m+1}}{m+1},$$

is the function of which the differential is $x^m dx$.

The integration is indicated by placing the character $\int$ before the differential which is to be integrated. Thus, we write

$$\int x^m dx = \frac{x^{m+1}}{m+1},$$

from which we deduce the following rule.

To integrate a monomial of the form $x^m dx$, *augment the exponent of the variable by unity, and divide by the exponent so increased and by the differential of the variable.*

209. The characteristic $\int$ signifies *integral* or *sum*. The word *sum*, was employed by those who first used the differential and integral calculus, and who regarded the integral of

$$x^m dx$$

as the *sum* of all the products which arise by multiplying the mth power of x, for all values of x, by the constant dx.

210. Let it be required to integrate the expression $\frac{dx}{x^3}$. We have, from the last rule,

$$\int \frac{dx}{x^3} = \int dx x^{-3} = \frac{x^{-3+1}}{-3+1} = \frac{x^{-2}}{-2} = -\frac{1}{2x^2}.$$

In a similar manner, we find

$$\int dx \sqrt[3]{x^2} = \int x^{\frac{2}{3}} dx = \frac{x^{\frac{2}{3}+1}}{\frac{2}{3}+1} = \frac{x^{\frac{5}{3}}}{\frac{5}{3}} = \frac{3x^{\frac{5}{3}}}{5}.$$

211. It has been shown (Art. 22), that the differential of the product of a variable multiplied by a constant, is equal to the constant multiplied by the differential of the variable. Hence, we may conclude that, *the integral of the product of a differential by a constant, is equal to the constant multiplied by the integral of the differential:* that is,

$$\int ax^m dx = a\int x^m dx = a\frac{x^{m+1}}{m+1}.$$

Hence, *if the expression to be integrated have one or more constant factors, they may be placed as factors without the sign of the integral.*

212. It has also been shown (Art. 22), that every constant quantity connected with the variable by the sign plus or minus, will disappear in the differentiation; and hence, the differential of $a + x^m$, is the same as that of x^m; viz. $mx^{m-1}dx$. Consequently, the same differential may answer to several integral functions differing from each other in the value of the constant term.

In passing, therefore, from the differential to the integral or function, we must annex to the first integral obtained, a constant term, and then find such a value for this term as will characterize the particular integral sought.

For example (Art. 94),

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = a, \quad \text{or} \quad dy = adx,$$

is the differential equation of every straight line which makes with the axis of abscissas an angle whose tangent is a. Integrating this expression, we have

$$\int dy = a \int dx,$$

or $$y = ax,$$

or finally, $$y = ax + C.$$

If now, the required line is to pass through the origin of co-ordinates, we shall have, for

$$x = 0, \quad y = 0, \quad \text{and consequently,} \quad C = 0.$$

But if it be required that the line shall intersect the axis of Y at a distance from the origin equal to $+b$, we shall have, for

$$x = 0, \quad y = +b, \quad \text{and consequently,} \quad C = +b;$$

and the true integral will be

$$y = ax + b.$$

If, on the contrary, it were required that the right line should intersect the axis of ordinates below the origin, we should have, for

$$x = 0, \quad y = -b, \quad \text{and consequently,} \quad C = -b;$$

and the true integral would be

$$y = ax - b.$$

213. It has been shown (Art. 95), that

$$xdx + ydy = 0$$

is the differential equation of the circumference of a circle. By taking the integral, we have,

$$\int xdx + \int ydy = 0, \quad \text{or} \quad x^2 + y^2 = 0,$$

or finally, $$x^2 + y^2 + C = 0.$$

If it be required that this integral shall represent a given circumference, of which the radius is R, we shall have, by making

$$x = 0, \qquad y^2 = -C = R^2,$$

and hence, $$C = -R^2;$$

and consequently the true integral is

$$x^2 + y^2 - R^2 = 0, \quad \text{or} \quad x^2 + y^2 = R^2.$$

The constant C, which is annexed to the first integral that is obtained, is called an *arbitrary constant*, because such a value is to be attributed to it as will cause the required integral to fulfil given conditions, which may be imposed on it at pleasure.

The value of the constant must be such, as to *render the equation true for every value which can be attributed to the variables.*

214. There is one case to which the formula of Art. 208 does not apply. It is that in which $m = -1$. Under this supposition,

$$\int x^m dx = \frac{x^{m+1}}{m+1} = \frac{x^{-1+1}}{-1+1} = \frac{x^0}{0} = \frac{1}{0} = \infty.$$

But when $m = -1$,

$$\int x^m dx = \int x^{-1} dx = \int \frac{dx}{x},$$

and $$\int \frac{dx}{x} = \log x + C. \quad \text{(Art. 57).}$$

215. Since the differential of a function composed of several terms, is equal to the sum or difference of the differentials (Art. 27), it follows that the integral of a differen-

tial expression, composed of several terms, is equal to the sum or difference of the integrals taken separately. For example, if

$$du = a dx - \frac{b dx}{x^3} + x\sqrt{x}\, dx, \qquad \text{we have}$$

$$\int du = \int\left(a dx - \frac{b dx}{x^3} + x\sqrt{x}\, dx\right), \qquad \text{and}$$

$$u = ax + \frac{1}{2}\frac{b}{x^2} + \frac{2}{5}x^2 + C.$$

216. Every polynomial of the form

$$(a + bx + cx^2 + \&c.)^n dx,$$

in which n is a positive and whole number, may be integrated by the rule for monomials, by first raising the polynomial to the power indicated by the exponent, and then multiplying each term by dx.

If, for example, we make $n = 2$, and employ but two terms, we have

$$\int (a + bx)^2 dx = \int(a^2 dx + 2abx\, dx + b^2x^2 dx),$$

$$= a^2x + abx^2 + \frac{b^2x^3}{3} + C.$$

Integration of Particular Binomials.

217. If we have a binomial of the form

$$du = (a + bx^n)^m x^{n-1} dx;$$

that is, *in which the exponent of the variable without the parenthesis is less by unity than the exponent of the variable within*, we may make

$a + bx^n = z$, which gives

$$nbx^{n-1}dx = dz, \quad \text{or} \quad x^{n-1}dx = \frac{dz}{nb};$$

whence $du = z^m \frac{dz}{nb}$, or $u = \frac{z^{m+1}}{(m+1)nb}$;

and consequently

$$u = \frac{(a + bx^n)^{m+1}}{(m+1)nb} + C.$$

Hence, the integral of the above form, is equal to *the binomial factor with its exponent augmented by unity, divided by the exponent so increased, into the exponent of the variable within the parenthesis into the coefficient of the variable.*

For example,

$$\int (a + 3x^2)^3 x dx = \frac{(a + 3x^2)^4}{4.2.3} + C; \quad \text{and}$$

$$\int (a + bx^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} mx dx = \frac{m}{3b}(a + bx^2)^{\frac{3}{2}} + C.$$

218. A transformation similar to that of the last article will enable us to integrate certain differentials corresponding to logarithmic functions. If we have an expression of the form

$$du = \frac{adx}{c + bx},$$

make $c + bx = z$, which gives $dx = \frac{dz}{b}$, and by substituting, we have

$$\int \frac{adx}{c + bx} = \int \frac{a}{b} \frac{dz}{z} = \frac{a}{b} \int \frac{dz}{z} = \frac{a}{b} \log z + C,$$

and by substituting for z its value

$$\int \frac{a dx}{c + bx} = \frac{a}{b} \log(c + bx) + C.$$

In a similar manner, we should find

$$\int \frac{a dx}{c - bx} = -\frac{a}{b} \log(a - bx) + C,$$

in which the integral is negative, since $d(a - bx) = -b dx$.

We can find, in a similar manner, the integral of every fraction of which *the numerator is equal to the differential of the denominator, or equal to that differential multiplied by a constant.*

If, for example, we have

$$du = \frac{(b + 2cx) m dx}{a + bx + cx^2};$$

make $a + bx + cx^2 = z$, which gives, $b dx + 2cx dx = dz$, and hence,

$$du = \frac{m dz}{z}, \quad \text{or} \quad u = m \log z,$$

and by substituting for z its value

$$u = m \log(a + bx + cx^2).$$

Of Differentials whose Integrals are expressed by the Circular Functions.

219. We have seen, Art. 71, that if x designates an arc and u the sine, to the radius unity, we shall have

$$dx = \frac{du}{\sqrt{1 - u^2}}.$$

hence,
$$\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{1-u^2}} = x + C;$$

or adopting the notation of Art. 72,

$$\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{1-u^2}} = \sin^{-1} u + C.$$

If the arc expressed in the second member of the equation be estimated from the beginning of the first quadrant, the sine will be 0, when the arc is 0, and we shall have, for $u = 0$

$$\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{1-u^2}} = 0, \quad \text{and consequently} \quad C = 0,$$

and under this supposition, the entire integral is

$$\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{1-u^2}} = \sin^{-1} u.$$

To give an example, showing the use of the arbitrary constant, let us suppose that the arc which is to be expressed by the second member of the equation, is to be estimated from the beginning of the second quadrant. This supposition will render

$$\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{1-u^2}} = 0 \quad \text{for} \quad u = 1.$$

But when $u = 1$, $\sin^{-1} u = \frac{1}{2}\pi$; hence,

$$\frac{1}{2}\pi + C = 0, \quad \text{or} \quad C = -\frac{1}{2}\pi:$$

and we have, for the entire integral, under this supposition,

$$\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{1-u^2}} = \sin^{-1} u - \frac{1}{2}\pi.$$

220. It frequently happens that we have expressions to integrate of the form

$$\frac{dz}{\sqrt{a^2 - z^2}}.$$

Let us suppose, for a moment, that a is the radius of a circle, and z the sine of any arc of the circle; and that u is the sine of an arc containing an equal number of degrees in a circle whose radius is unity: we shall then have,

$$1 : u :: a : z;$$

hence, $$u = \frac{z}{a}, \quad \text{and} \quad du = \frac{dz}{a};$$

and consequently,

$$\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{1 - u^2}} = \int \left[\frac{\frac{dz}{a}}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{z^2}{a^2}}} \right] = \int \frac{dz}{\sqrt{a^2 - z^2}};$$

hence, $$\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{1 - u^2}} = \int \frac{dz}{\sqrt{a^2 - z^2}} = \sin^{-1} \frac{z}{a};$$

the arc being still taken in a circle whose radius is unity.

221. We have seen (Art. 71), that if x designates an arc, and u the cosine, to the radius unity, we shall have

$$dx = -\frac{du}{\sqrt{1 - u^2}};$$

hence, $$\int -\frac{du}{\sqrt{1 - u^2}} = x + C;$$

or adopting the notation of Art. 72,

$$\int -\frac{du}{\sqrt{1 - u^2}} = \cos^{-1} u + C.$$

If the arc be estimated from the beginning of the first quadrant, it will be equal to $\frac{1}{2}\pi$ for $u = 0$; hence, the first member of the equation becomes equal to $\frac{1}{2}\pi$ when $u = 0$. But under this supposition, $\cos^{-1}u = \frac{1}{2}\pi$: hence, $C = 0$, and the entire integral is

$$\int -\frac{du}{\sqrt{1-u^2}} = \cos^{-1}u.$$

222. By a method analogous to that of Art. 220, we should find

$$\int -\frac{dz}{\sqrt{a^2-z^2}} = \cos^{-1}\frac{z}{a},$$

the arc being estimated to the radius unity.

223. We have seen (Art. 71), that if x represents an arc, and u its tangent, to the radius unity, we have

$$dx = \frac{du}{1+u^2};$$

hence,
$$\int \frac{du}{1+u^2} = x + C;$$

or, adopting the notation of Art. 72,

$$\int \frac{du}{1+u^2} = \text{tang}^{-1}u + C.$$

If the arc is estimated from the beginning of the first quadrant, we shall have

$\text{tang}^{-1} = 0$, when $\int \frac{du}{1+u^2} = 0$; hence, $C = 0$,

and the entire integral is

$$\int \frac{du}{1+u^2} = \text{tang}^{-1} u.$$

224. To integrate expressions of the form

$$\frac{dz}{a^2+z^2};$$

let us suppose for a moment that a is the radius of a circle, and z the tangent of any arc, and that u is the tangent of an arc containing an equal number of degrees in a circle whose radius is unity: we shall then have

$$1 : u :: a : z;$$

hence, $$u = \frac{z}{a}, \quad u^2 = \frac{z^2}{a^2}, \quad \text{and} \quad du = \frac{dz}{a},$$

and consequently,

$$\int \frac{du}{1+u^2} = a \int \frac{dz}{a^2+z^2} = \text{tang}^{-1} \frac{z}{a};$$

hence, by dividing by a,

$$\int \frac{dz}{a^2+z^2} = \frac{1}{a} \text{tang}^{-1} \frac{z}{a},$$

the arc being estimated to the radius unity.

225. We have seen (Art. 71), that if x represents an arc, and u the versed-sine, to the radius of unity, we have

$$dx = \frac{du}{\sqrt{2u-u^2}};$$

hence, $$\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{2u-u^2}} = x = \text{ver-sin}^{-1} u + C:$$

and if the arc is estimated from the beginning of the first quadrant, $C = 0$, and we shall have

$$\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{2u - u^2}} = \text{ver-sin}^{-1} u.$$

226. To integrate an expression of the form

$$\frac{dz}{\sqrt{2az - z^2}}.$$

Suppose, as before, a to be the radius of a circle, and we shall have (Art. 224),

$$u = \frac{z}{a}, \qquad du = \frac{dz}{a};$$

and consequently,

$$\int \frac{du}{\sqrt{2u - u^2}} = \int \frac{dz}{\sqrt{2az - z^2}} = \text{ver-sin} \frac{z}{a}$$

to the radius unity.

Integration by Series.

227. Every expression of the form

$$X dx,$$

in which X is such a function of x, that it can be developed in the powers of x, may be integrated by series.

For, let us suppose

$$X = Ax^a + Bx^b + Cx^c + Dx^d + \&c., \quad \text{then,}$$

$$X dx = Ax^a dx + Bx^b dx + Cx^c dx + Dx^d dx + \&c.,$$

$$\int X dx = \frac{A}{a+1} x^{a+1} + \frac{B}{b+1} x^{b+1} + \frac{C}{c+1} x^{c+1} + \frac{D}{d+1} x^{d+1} + \&c.$$

Hence, the integration by series is effected by *developing the function* ^1X *in the powers of* x, *multiplying the series by* dx, *and then integrating the terms separately.*

Let us take, as a first example, $\frac{dx}{a+x}$,

$$\frac{dx}{a+x} = dx \times \frac{1}{a+x} = dx(a+x)^{-1},$$

$$(a+x)^{-1} = \frac{1}{a} - \frac{x}{a^2} + \frac{x^2}{a^3} - \frac{x^3}{a^4} + \&c.;$$

and consequently,

$$\int \frac{dx}{a+x} = \int \left(\frac{1}{a}dx - \frac{xdx}{a^2} + \frac{x^2dx}{a^3} - \frac{x^3dx}{a^4} + \&c.\right);$$

and integrating each term separately, we obtain

$$\int \frac{dx}{a+x} = \frac{x}{a} - \frac{x^2}{2a^2} + \frac{x^3}{3a^3} - \frac{x^4}{4a^4} + \&c. + C,$$

and remarking that $\int \frac{dx}{a+x} = \log(a+x)$ (Art. 218), we have

$$\log(a+x) = \frac{x}{a} - \frac{x^2}{2a^2} + \frac{x^3}{3a^3} - \frac{x^4}{4a^4} + \&c. + C.$$

To determine the value of the constant, make $x = 0$, which gives

$$\log a = 0 + C, \quad \text{or} \quad C = \log a; \quad \text{hence,}$$

$$\log(a+x) = \log a + \frac{x}{a} - \frac{x^2}{2a^2} + \frac{x^3}{3a^3} - \frac{x^4}{4a^4} + \&c.,$$

$$\log(a+x) - \log a = \log\left(1 + \frac{x}{a}\right) = \frac{x}{a} - \frac{x^2}{2a^2} + \frac{x^3}{3a^3} - \&c.,$$

a result which agrees with the development in Art. 58.

228. Let us take, for a second example $\frac{dx}{1+x^2}$.

We have, $$\frac{dx}{1+x^2} = dx(1+x^2)^{-1};$$

and by developing and integrating,

$$\int \frac{dx}{1+x^2} = x - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} - \frac{x^7}{7} + \&c. + C.$$

When we make $x = 0$, the arc is 0; hence,

$$\tang^{-1}x = x - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} - \frac{x^7}{7} + \&c.;$$

a result which corresponds with that of Art. 78.

229. If, in the expression $\frac{dx}{1+x^2}$, we place x^2 in the first term of the binomial, and then develop the binomial x^2+1, we obtain

$$\int \frac{dx}{x^2+1} = \int \left(\frac{1}{x^2} - \frac{1}{x^4} + \frac{1}{x^6} - \frac{1}{x^8} + \&c.\right) dx;$$

and by integrating, we have

$$\tang^{-1}x = -\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{3x^3} - \frac{1}{5x^5} + \&c. + C.$$

To find the value of the constant C, let us make the arc $= 90^\circ = \frac{1}{2}\pi$. This supposition will render the tangent x infinite, and consequently every term of the series will become 0, and the equation will give

$$\frac{1}{2}\pi = 0 + C, \quad \text{or} \quad C = \frac{1}{2}\pi.$$

Making this substitution, we have, for the true integral,

$$\int \frac{dx}{x^2+1} = \tang^{-1}x = \frac{1}{2}\pi - \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{3x^3} - \frac{1}{5x^5} + \&c.$$

230. The two series, found from the expressions $\frac{dx}{1+x^2}$ and $\frac{dx}{x^2+1}$, are, as they should be, essentially the same.

For, the tangent of an arc multiplied by its cotangent, is equal to radius square or unity (Trig. Art. XVIII). Hence, if we substitute for x, in the first series, $\frac{1}{x}$, we shall have, for the complemental arc,

$$\tang^{-1}\frac{1}{x} = \frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{3x^3} + \frac{1}{5x^5};$$

and subtracting both members from $\frac{1}{2}\pi$,

$$\frac{1}{2}\pi - \tang^{-1}\frac{1}{x} = \tang^{-1}x = \frac{1}{2}\pi - \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{3x^3} - \frac{1}{5x^5} + \&c.$$

231. We have found (Art. 71),

$$\sin^{-1}x = \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} = (1-x^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}dx;$$

and by developing, we find

$$(1-x^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}} = 1 + \frac{1}{2}x^2 + \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{3}{4}x^4 + \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{3}{4}\cdot\frac{5}{6}x^6 + \&c.;$$

multiplying by dx, and integrating, we obtain,

$$\sin^{-1}x = x + \frac{1}{2}\frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{3}{4}\frac{x^5}{5} + \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{3}{4}\cdot\frac{5}{6}\frac{x^7}{7} + \&c.,$$

the constant being 0 when the arc is estimated from the beginning of the first quadrant.

If we take the arc of 30°, the sine of which is equal to half the radius (Trig. Art. XIV), we shall have

$$\sin^{-1}30° = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{1}{3}\cdot\frac{1}{2^3} + \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{3}{4}\cdot\frac{1}{5}\cdot\frac{1}{2^5} + \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{3}{4}\cdot\frac{5}{6}\cdot\frac{1}{7}\cdot\frac{1}{2^7} + \&c.;$$

hence,

$$\pi = 6\sin^{-1}30° = 6\left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1.1.1}{2.3.2^3} + \frac{1.3.1.1}{2.4.5.2^5} + \frac{1.3.5.1.1}{2.4.6.7.2^7} + \&c.\right),$$

and by taking the first ten terms of the series, we find

$$\pi = 3.1415962,$$

which is true to the last decimal figure, which should be 5.

232. We will add a few more examples.

1. To integrate the expression $\dfrac{dx}{\sqrt{x - x^2}}$.

By making $\sqrt{x} = u$, we have

$$\frac{dx}{\sqrt{x - x^2}} = \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x}\sqrt{1 - x}} = \frac{2\,du}{\sqrt{1 - u^2}}.$$

But from the last series

$$\int \frac{2\,du}{\sqrt{1 - u^2}} = 2\left(u + \frac{1}{2}\frac{u^3}{3} + \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{3}{4}\frac{u^5}{5} + \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{3}{4}\cdot\frac{5}{6}\frac{u^7}{7} + \&c.\right) + C;$$

hence

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x - x^2}} = 2\left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\frac{x}{3} + \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{3}{4}\frac{x^2}{5} + \frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{3}{4}\cdot\frac{5}{6}\frac{x^3}{7} + \&c.\right)\sqrt{x} + C.$$

2. $dx\sqrt{2ax - x^2} = (2a)^{\frac{1}{2}}x^{\frac{1}{2}}\,dx\left(1 - \dfrac{x}{2a}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$.

But

$$\left(1-\frac{x}{2a}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}=1-\frac{1}{2}\frac{x}{2a}-\frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{1}{4}\frac{x}{4a^2}-\frac{1.1.3}{2.4.6}\frac{x^3}{8a^3}-\text{&c.};$$

hence

$$\int dx\sqrt{2ax-x^2}=\left(\frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}}-\frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{2}{5}\frac{x^{\frac{5}{2}}}{2a}-\frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{1}{4}\cdot\frac{2}{7}\frac{x^{\frac{7}{2}}}{4a^2}\right.$$

$$\left.-\frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{1}{4}\cdot\frac{3}{6}\cdot\frac{2}{9}\frac{x^{\frac{9}{2}}}{8a^3}-\text{&c.}\right)\sqrt{2a}+C:$$

and consequently

$$\int dx\sqrt{2ax-x^2}=\left(\frac{1}{3}-\frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{1}{5}\frac{x}{2a}-\frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{1}{4}\cdot\frac{1}{7}\frac{x^2}{4a^2}\right.$$

$$\left.-\frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{1}{4}\cdot\frac{3}{6}\cdot\frac{1}{9}\frac{x^3}{8a^3}-\text{&c.}\right)2x\sqrt{2ax}+C.$$

If the radius of a circle be represented by a, and the origin of co-ordinates be placed in the circumference, the equation will be (An. Geom. Bk. III, Prop. I, Sch. 3),

$$y^2=2ax-x^2;\quad\text{hence}\quad y=\sqrt{2ax-x^2},$$

and consequently (Art. 130)

$$dx\sqrt{2ax-x^2}=ydx$$

is the differential of a circular segment.

If we estimate the area from the origin, where $x=0$, we shall have $C=0$. If then we make $x=a$, the series will give the area of one quarter of the circle, if we make $x=2a$, of the semicircle.

3. $$\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{1+x^2}}=x-\frac{1}{2}\frac{x^3}{3}+\frac{1.3}{2.4}\frac{x^5}{5}-\frac{1.3.5}{2.4.6}\frac{x^7}{7}+\text{&c.}+C.$$

$$4.\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2-1}} = lx - \frac{1}{2.2x^2} - \frac{1.3}{2.4.4x^4} - \frac{1.3.5}{2.4.6.6x^6} - \&c. + C.$$

Integration of Differential Binomials.

234. Differential binomials may be represented under the general form

$$x^{m-1}dx(a+bx^n)^{\frac{p}{q}},$$

in which, without affecting the generality of the expression, m and n may be regarded as entire numbers, and n as positive.

For, if m and n were fractional, and the binomial of the form

$$x^{\frac{1}{3}}dx(a+bx^{\frac{1}{2}})^{\frac{p}{q}}$$

make $x=z^6$, that is, make the exponent of z the least common multiple of the denominators of the exponents of x, and we shall then have

$$x^{\frac{1}{3}}dx(a+bx^{\frac{1}{2}})^{\frac{p}{q}} = 6z^7dz(a+bz^3)^{\frac{p}{q}},$$

in which the exponents of the variable are entire.

If n were negative, we should have,

$$x^{m-1}dx(a+bx^{-n})^{\frac{p}{q}},$$

and by making $x=\frac{1}{z}$, we should obtain

$$-z^{-m-1}dz(a+bz^n)^{\frac{p}{q}},$$

the same form as before.

Furthermore, the binomial

$$x^{m-1}\,dx(ax^r + bx^n)^{\frac{p}{q}}$$

may be reduced to the form

$$x^{m+\frac{pr}{q}-1}\,dx(a + bx^{n-r})^{\frac{p}{q}},$$

by dividing the binomial within the parenthesis by x^r, and multiplying the factor without by $x^{\frac{pr}{q}}$.

235. Let us now determine the cases in which the binomial $x^{m-1}dx(a + bx^n)^{\frac{p}{q}}$ has an exact integral.

Make $a + bx^n = z^q$; we shall then have

$$x^n = \frac{z^q - a}{b}, \quad (a + bx^n)^{\frac{p}{q}} = z^p, \quad x^m = \left(\frac{z^q - a}{b}\right)^{\frac{m}{n}},$$

and by differentiating,

$$x^{m-1}dx = \frac{q}{nb}z^{q-1}\left(\frac{z^q - a}{b}\right)^{\frac{m}{n}-1} dz;$$

hence

$$x^{m-1}\,dx(a + bx^n)^{\frac{p}{q}} = \frac{q}{nb}z^{p+q-1}dz\left(\frac{z^q - a}{b}\right)^{\frac{m}{n}-1},$$

which will have an exact integral when $\frac{m}{n}$ is a whole number (Art. 216).

Hence, *every differential binomial has an exact integral, when the exponent of the variable without the parenthesis augmented by unity, is exactly divisible by the exponent of the variable within.*

Thus, for example, the expression

$$x^5\,dx(a + bx^2)^{\frac{p}{q}}$$

has an exact integral. For, by comparing it with the general binomial, we find

$$m = 6, \quad n = 2, \quad \text{and consequently,} \quad \frac{m}{n} = 3,$$

and the transformed binomial becomes

$$\frac{q}{2b} z^{p+q-1} dz \left(\frac{z^q - a}{b}\right)^2.$$

236. There is yet another case in which the binomial $x^{m-1} dx (a + bx^n)^{\frac{p}{q}}$ has an exact integral.

If we multiply and divide by x^n, we have

$$\begin{aligned} x^{m-1} dx (a + bx^n)^{\frac{p}{q}} &= x^{m-1} dx [(ax^{-n} + b) x^n]^{\frac{p}{q}} \\ &= x^{m-1} dx (ax^{-n} + b)^{\frac{p}{q}} x^{\frac{np}{q}} \\ &= x^{m+\frac{np}{q}-1} dx (ax^{-n} + b)^{\frac{p}{q}}, \end{aligned}$$

Now, if we add unity to the exponent of x without the parenthesis, and divide by $-n$, the quotient will be $-\left(\frac{m}{n} + \frac{p}{q}\right)$, and the expression will have an exact integral when this quotient is a whole number (Art. 235).

Hence, *every differential binomial has an exact integral, when the exponent of the variable without the parenthesis augmented by unity, plus the exponent of the parenthesis, is an entire number.*

237. The integration of differential binomials is effected by resolving them into two parts, of which one at least has a known integral.

We have seen (Art. 28) that

$$d(uv) = udv + vdu,$$

whence, by integrating,

$$uv = \int u dv + \int v du,$$

and, consequently,

$$\int u dv = uv - \int v du.$$

Hence, if we have a differential of the form Xdx, in which the function X may be decomposed into two factors P and Q, of which one of them, Qdx, can be integrated, we shall have, by making $\int Q dx = v$ and $P = u$,

$$\int PQdx = Pv - \int v dP,$$

in which it is only required to integrate the term $\int v dP$.

238. To abridge the results, let us write p for $\frac{p}{q}$, in which case p will represent a fraction, and the differential binomial will take the form

$$x^{m-1} dx (a + bx^n)^p.$$

If now, we multiply by the two factors x^n and x^{-n}, the value will not be affected, and we obtain

$$x^{m-n} x^{n-1} dx (a + bx^n)^p.$$

Now, the factor $x^{n-1} dx (a + bx^n)^p$ is integrable, whatever be the value of p (Art. 217); and representing this factor by dv, we have

$$v = \frac{(a + bx^n)^{p+1}}{(p+1)nb}, \quad \text{and} \quad u = x^{m-n},$$

and, consequently,

$$\int x^{m-1} dx (a + bx^n)^p =$$

$$\frac{x^{m-n}(a + bx^n)^{p+1}}{(p+1)nb} - \frac{m-n}{(p+1)nb} \int x^{m-n-1} dx (a + bx^n)^{p+1}.$$

But, $$\int x^{m-n-1}dx(a+bx^n)^{p+1} =$$

$$\int x^{m-n-1}dx(a+bx^n)^p(a+bx^n) =$$

$$a\int x^{m-n-1}dx(a+bx^n)^p + b\int x^{m-1}dx(a+bx^n)^p;$$

substituting this last value in the preceding equation, and collecting the terms containing the integral

$$\int x^{m-1}dx(a+bx^n)^p,$$

we have

$$\left(1+\frac{m-n}{(p+1)n}\right)\int x^{m-1}dx(a+bx^n)^p =$$

$$\frac{x^{m-n}(a+bx^n)^{p+1} - a(m-n)\int x^{m-n-1}dx(a+bx)^p}{(p+1)nb};$$

whence,

$$\text{formula (A.)} \ldots\ldots\ldots \int x^{m-1}dx(a+bx^n)^p =$$

$$\frac{x^{m-n}(a+bx^n)^{p+1} - a(m-n)\int x^{m-n-1}dx(a+bx^n)^p}{b(pn+m)}.$$

This formula reduces the differential binomial

$$\int x^{m-1}dx(a+bx^n)^p \quad \text{to that of} \quad \int x^{m-n-1}dx(a+bx^n)^p;$$

and by a similar process we should find

$$\int x^{m-n-1}dx(a+bx^n)^p \text{ to depend on } \int x^{m-2n-1}dx(a+bx^n)^p;$$

and consequently, each process diminishes the exponent of the variable without the parenthesis by the exponent of the variable within.

After the second integration, the factor $m-n$, of the second term, will become $m-2n$; and after the third, $m-3n$, &c. If m is a multiple of n, the factor $m-n$, $m-2n$, $m-3n$, &c., will finally become equal to 0, and then the differential into which it is multiplied will disap-

pear, and the given differential will have an exact integral, which corresponds with the result of Art. 235.

239. Let us now determine a formula for diminishing the exponent of the parenthesis.

We have

$$\int x^{m-1}dx(a+bx^n)^p = \int x^{m-1}dx(a+bx^n)^{p-1}(a+bx^n) =$$
$$a\int x^{m-1}dx(a+bx^n)^{p-1} + b\int x^{m+n-1}dx(a+bx^n)^{p-1}.$$

Applying formula (A) to the second term, by placing $m+n$ for m, and $p-1$ for p, we have

$$\int x^{m+n-1}dx(a+bx^n)^{p-1} =$$
$$\frac{x^m(a+bx^n)^p - am\int x^{m-1}dx(a+bx^n)^{p-1}}{b(pn+m)}.$$

Substituting this value in the last equation, we have

$$\text{formula (B)} \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots \int x^{m-1}dx(a+bx^n)^p =$$
$$\frac{x^m(a+bx^n)^p + pna\int x^{m-1}dx(a+bx^n)^{p-1}}{pn+m},$$

which diminishes the exponent of the parenthesis by unity for each integration.

240. By means of formulás (A) and (B), we reduce

$$\int x^{m-1}dx(a+bx^n)^p \quad \text{to} \quad \int x^{m-rn-1}dx(a+bx^n)^{p-s};$$

rn being the greatest multiple of n which can be taken from $m-1$, and s the greatest whole number which can be subtracted from p.

For example, $\int x^7dx(a+bx^3)^{\frac{5}{2}}$ is reduced, by formula (A), to

$$\int x^4dx(a+bx^3)^{\frac{5}{2}}, \quad \text{and then to} \quad \int xdx(a+bx^3)^{\frac{5}{2}}:$$

and by formula (B) $\int x dx (a+bx^3)^{\frac{5}{2}}$, reduces to

$\int x dx (a+bx^3)^{\frac{3}{2}}$, and finally to $\int x dx (a+bx^3)^{\frac{1}{2}}$.

241. It is evident that formulas (A) and (B) will only diminish the exponents $m-1$ and p, when m and p are positive. We will now determine two formulas for diminishing these exponents when they are negative.

We find from formula (A)

$$\int x^{m-n-1} dx (a+bx^n)^p =$$

$$\frac{x^{m-n}(a+bx^n)^{p+1} - b(m+np)\int x^{m-1} dx (a+bx^n)^p}{a(m-n)};$$

and placing for m, $-m+n$, we have

$$\text{formula (C)} \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots \int x^{-m-1} dx (a+bx^n)^p =$$

$$\frac{x^{-m}(a+bx^n)^{p+1} + b(m-n-np)\int x^{-m+n-1} dx (a+bx^n)^p}{-am},$$

in which formula, it should be remembered that the negative sign has been attributed to the exponent m.

242. To find the formula for diminishing the exponent of the parenthesis when it is negative.

We find, from formula (B),

$$\int x^{m-1} dx (a+bx^n)^{p-1} =$$

$$-\frac{x^m(a+bx^n)^p - (m+np)\int x^{m-1} dx (a+bx^n)^p}{pna},$$

writing for p, $-p+1$, we have

$$\text{formula (D)} \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots \int x^{m-1} dx (a+bx^n)^{-p} =$$

$$\frac{x^m(a+bx^n)^{-p+1} - (m+n-np)\int x^{m-1} dx (a+bx^n)^{-p+1}}{(p-1)na}.$$

This formula does not apply to the case in which $p=1$. Under this supposition, the second member becomes infinite, and the differential becomes that of a transcendental function.

243. It is sometimes convenient to leave the variable in both terms of the binomial. We shall therefore determine a particular formula for integrating the binomial

$$x^q(2ax-x^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}dx=\frac{x^q\,dx}{\sqrt{2ax-x^2}}:$$

This binomial may be placed under the form

$$\int x^{q-\frac{1}{2}}dx(2a-x)^{-\frac{1}{2}},$$

and if we apply formula (A), after making

$$m=q+\frac{1}{2},\quad n=1,\quad p=-\frac{1}{2},\quad a=2a,\quad b=-1,$$

we shall have

$$\int x^{q-\frac{1}{2}}dx(2a-x)^{-\frac{1}{2}}=$$

$$-\frac{x^{q-\frac{1}{2}}(2a-x)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{q}+\frac{2a(q-\frac{1}{2})}{q}\int x^{q-\frac{3}{2}}dx(2a-x)^{-\frac{1}{2}};$$

and if we observe that

$$x^{q-\frac{1}{2}}=x^q x^{-\frac{1}{2}},\quad x^{q-\frac{3}{2}}=x^{q-1}x^{-\frac{1}{2}},$$

and pass the fractional powers of x within the parentheses, we shall have

formula (E) . . . . . $\int\frac{x^q\,dx}{\sqrt{2ax-x^2}}=$

$$-\frac{x^{q-1}\sqrt{2ax-x^2}}{q}+\frac{(2q-1)a}{q}\int\frac{x^{q-1}dx}{\sqrt{2ax-x^2}},$$

which diminishes the exponent of the variable without the parenthesis by unity. If q is a positive and entire number, we shall have, after q integrations (Art. 226),

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{2ax - x^2}} = \text{ver-sin}^{-1}\frac{x}{a}.$$

Integration of Rational Fractions.

211. Every rational fraction may be written under the form

$$\frac{Px^{n-1} + Qx^{n-2} \ldots\ldots + Rx + S}{P'x^n + Q'x^{n-1} \ldots\ldots + R'x + S'}dx,$$

in which the exponent of the highest power of the variable in the numerator, is less by unity than in the denominator. For, if the greatest exponent in the numerator was equal to or exceeded the greatest exponent in the denominator, the division might be made, giving one or more entire terms for a quotient and a remainder, in which the exponent of the leading letter would be less by at least unity, than the exponent of the leading letter in the divisor. The entire terms could then be integrated, and there would remain the fraction under the above form.

Place the denominator of the fraction equal to 0: that is, make

$$P'x^n + Q'x^{n-1} \ldots\ldots R'x + S' = 0,$$

and let us also suppose that we have found the n binomial factors into which it may be resolved (Alg. Art. 264). These factors will be of the form $x - a$, $x - b$, $x - c$, $x - d$, &c. Now there are three cases:

1st. When the roots of the equation are real and unequal.

2d. When they are real and equal.

3d. When there are imaginary factors.

We will consider these cases in succession.

1st. *When the roots are real and unequal.*

245. Let us take, as a first example, $\frac{adx}{x^2-a^2}$.

By decomposing the denominator into its factors, we have

$$\frac{adx}{x^2-a^2}=\frac{adx}{(x-a)(x+a)},$$

and we may make

$$\frac{adx}{(x-a)(x+a)}=\left(\frac{A}{x-a}+\frac{B}{x+a}\right)dx,$$

in which A and B are constants, whose values are yet to be determined. In order to determine these constants, let us reduce the terms of the second member of the equation to a common denominator; we shall then have

$$\frac{adx}{(x-a)(x+a)}=\frac{(Ax+Aa+Bx-Ba)dx}{(x-a)(x+a)}.$$

In comparing the two members of the equation, we find

$$a=Ax+Aa+Bx-Ba;$$

or, by arranging with reference to x,

$$(A+B)x+(A-B-1)a=0.$$

But, since this equation is true for all values of x, the

coefficients must be separately equal to 0 (Alg. Art. 208): hence

$$A+B=0, \quad \text{and} \quad (A-B-1)a=0,$$

which gives

$$A=\frac{1}{2}, \quad B=-\frac{1}{2},$$

Substituting these values for A and B, we obtain

$$\frac{adx}{x^2-a^2}=\frac{\frac{1}{2}dx}{x-a}-\frac{\frac{1}{2}dx}{x+a};$$

and integrating, we find (Art. 218)

$$\int\frac{adx}{x^2-a^2}=\frac{1}{2}\log(x-a)-\frac{1}{2}\log(x+a)+C,$$

and, consequently,

$$\int\frac{adx}{x^2-a^2}=\frac{1}{2}\log\left(\frac{x-a}{x+a}\right)+C=\log\left(\frac{x-a}{x+a}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}+C.$$

246. Let us take, as a second example, $\dfrac{a^3+bx^2}{a^2x-x^3}dx.$

The factors of the denominator are x and a^2-x^2; but

$$a^2-x^2=(a+x)(a-x):$$

hence, the given fraction becomes

$$\frac{a^3+bx^2}{x(a-x)(a+x)}dx.$$

Let us now make

$$\frac{a^3+bx^2}{x(a-x)(a+x)}=\left(\frac{A}{x}+\frac{B}{a-x}+\frac{C}{a+x},\right.$$

reducing the terms of the second member to a common denominator, we have

$$\frac{a^3+bx^2}{x(a-x)(a+x)}=\frac{Aa^2-Ax^2+Bax+Bx^2+Cax-Cx^2}{x(a-x)(a+x)},$$

and, comparing the like powers of x (Alg. Art. 208),

$$B-A-C=b, \quad Ba+Ca=0, \quad Aa^2=a^3.$$

From these equations, we find

$$A=a, \quad B=\frac{a+b}{2}, \quad C=-\frac{a+b}{2},$$

and substituting these values, we obtain

$$\frac{a^3+bx^2}{a^2x-x^3}dx=a\frac{dx}{x}+\frac{a+b}{2(a-x)}dx-\frac{a+b}{2(a+x)}dx;$$

and integrating (Art. 218),

$$\int\frac{a^3+bx^2}{a^2x-x^3}dx=a\log x-\frac{a+b}{2}\log(a-x)$$
$$-\frac{a+b}{2}\log(a+x)+C$$

$$=a\log x-\frac{a+b}{2}[\log(a-x)+\log(a+x)]+C$$

$$=a\log x-\frac{a+b}{2}\log(a-x)(a+x)+C$$

$$=a\log x-\frac{a+b}{2}\log(a^2-x^2)+C$$

$$=a\log x-(a+b)\log\sqrt{a^2-x^2}+C.$$

247. Let us take, for a third example, $\dfrac{3x-5}{x^2-6x+8}dx.$

Resolving the denominator into the two binomial factors (Alg. Art. 142), $(x-2)$, $(x-4)$, we have

$$\frac{3x-5}{x^2-6x+8} = \frac{A}{x-2} + \frac{B}{x-4}, \quad \text{hence}$$

$$\frac{3x-5}{x^2-6x+8} = \frac{Ax-4A+Bx-2B}{x^2-6x+8};$$

and by comparing the coefficients of x, we have

$$-5 = -4A - 2B, \qquad 3 = A + B,$$

which gives

$$B = \frac{7}{2}, \qquad A = -\frac{1}{2},$$

and substituting these values, we have

$$\int \frac{3x-5}{x^2-6x+8}\,dx = -\frac{1}{2}\int \frac{dx}{x-2} + \frac{7}{2}\int \frac{dx}{x-4} + C$$

$$= \frac{7}{2}\log(x-4) - \frac{1}{2}\log(x-2) + C.$$

248. Let us take, as a last example,

$$\frac{x\,dx}{x^2+4ax-b^2}.$$

Resolving the equation

$$x^2 + 4ax - b^2 = 0,$$

we find

$$x = -2a + \sqrt{4a^2+b^2}, \qquad x = -2a - \sqrt{4a^2+b^2},$$

and consequently, for the product of the factors,

$$(x+2a+\sqrt{4a^2+b^2})\,(x+2a-\sqrt{4a^2+b^2}) = x^2+4ax-b^2.$$

To simplify the work, represent the roots by $-K$ and $-L$, and the factors will then be

$$x+K, \quad x+L,$$

and we shall have

$$\frac{x}{x^2+4ax-b^2}=\frac{A}{x+K}+\frac{B}{x+L}: \quad \text{hence}$$

$$\frac{x}{x^2+4ax-b^2}=\frac{Ax+AL+Bx+BK}{x^2+4ax-b^2},$$

whence,

$$AL+BK=0, \quad A+B=1,$$

and, consequently,

$$A=\frac{K}{K-L}, \qquad B=-\frac{L}{K-L}:$$

hence,

$$\int\frac{xdx}{x^2+4ax-b^2}=\frac{K}{K-L}\log(x+K)-\frac{L}{K-L}\log(x+L)+C.$$

249. In general, to integrate a rational fraction of the form

$$\frac{Px^{m-1}+Qx^{m-2}\ldots\ldots+Rx+S}{x^m+Q'x^{m-1}\ldots\ldots+R'x+S'}dx.$$

1st. *Resolve the fraction into* m *partial fractions, of which the numerators shall be constants, and the denominators factors of the denominator of the given fraction.*

2d. *Find the values of the numerators of the partial fractions, and multiply each by* dx.

3d. *Integrate each partial fraction separately, and the sum of the integrals thus found will be the integral sought.*

250. The method which has just been explained, will require some modification when any of the roots of the denominator are equal to each other. When the roots are unequal, the fraction may be placed under the form

$$\frac{Px^4+Qx^3+Rx^2+Sx+T}{(x-a)(x-b)(x-c)(x-d)(x-e)}$$
$$=\frac{A}{x-a}+\frac{B}{x-b}+\frac{C}{x-c}+\frac{D}{x-d}+\frac{E}{x-e};$$

if several of these roots are equal, as for example, $a=b=c$, the last equation will become

$$\frac{Px^4+Qx^3+\&c.}{(x-a)^3(x-d)(x-e)}=\frac{A+B+C}{x-a}+\frac{D}{x-d}-\frac{E}{x-e},$$

in which $A+B+C$ may be represented by a single constant A'.

Now, in reducing the second member of the equation to a common denominator with the first, and comparing the coefficients of the like powers of x, we shall have five equations of condition between three arbitrary constants, A', D, and E: hence, these equations will be incompatible with each other (Alg. Art. 103).

If, however, instead of adding the three partial fractions

$$\frac{A}{x-a},\quad \frac{B}{x-b},\quad \frac{C}{x-c},$$

which have the same denominator, we go through the

process of reducing them to one, their sum may be placed under the form

$$\frac{A' + B'x + C'x^2}{(x-a)^3},$$

or, by omitting the accents,

$$\frac{A + Bx + Cx^2}{(x-a)^3}.$$

251. Let us now make

$$x - a = z, \quad \text{and consequently,} \quad x = z + a;$$

we shall then have

$$\frac{A + Bx + Cx^2}{(x-a)^3} = \frac{A + Ba + Ca^2 + Bz + 2Caz + Cz^2}{z^3}$$

$$= \frac{A + Ba + Ca^2}{z^3} + \frac{B + 2Ca}{z^2} + \frac{C}{z};$$

substituting for z its value, and representing the numerators by single constants, we have

$$\frac{A + Bx + Cx^2}{(x-a)^3} = \frac{A'}{(x-a)^3} + \frac{B'}{(x-a)^2} + \frac{C'}{x-a};$$

the form under which the fraction may be written.

Since the same reasoning will apply to the case in which there are m equal factors, we conclude that

$$\frac{Px^{m-1} + Qx^{m-2} \ldots + Rx + S}{(x-a)^m} =$$

$$\frac{A}{(x-a)^m} + \frac{A'}{(x-a)^{m-1}} + \frac{A''}{(x-a)^{m-2}} \ldots + \frac{A''\ldots!}{x-a}.$$

252. In order, therefore, to integrate the fraction

$$\frac{Px^4 + Q'x^3 + \&c.}{(x-a)^3\,(x-d)\,(x-e)}dx,$$

place it equal to

$$\frac{A}{(x-a)^3}+\frac{A'}{(x-a)^2}+\frac{A''}{x-a}+\frac{D}{x-d}+\frac{E}{x-e};$$

then, reducing to a common denominator, and comparing the coefficients of the like powers of x, we find the values of the numerators of the partial fractions. Multiplying each by dx, and the given fraction may be written under the form

$$\frac{A}{(x-a)^3}dx+\frac{A'}{(x-a)^2}dx+\frac{A''}{(x-a)}dx+\frac{D}{x-d}dx+\frac{E}{x-e}dx.$$

The first two fractions may be integrated by the method of Art. 217, and the three last by logarithms. Hence, finally,

$$\int\frac{Px^4+Qx^3+Rx^2+Sx+T}{(x-a)^3(x-d)(x-e)}dx=-\frac{A}{2(x-a)^2}-\frac{A'}{x-a}$$
$$+A''\log(x-a)+D\log(x-d)+E\log(x-e)+C.$$

253. Let it be required to integrate the fraction

$$\frac{2ax}{(x+a)^2}dx.$$

We have

$$\frac{2ax}{(x+a)^2}=\frac{A}{(x+a)^2}+\frac{A'}{x+a};$$

reducing the fractions of the second member to a common denominator, and comparing the coefficients of x in the two members, we have

$$2a=A' \quad \text{and} \quad A+A'a=0:$$

hence,

$$A=-2a^2, \quad \text{and} \quad A'=2a;$$

and, consequently,

$$\frac{2axdx}{(x+a)^2} = -\frac{2a^2dx}{(x+a)^2} + \frac{2adx}{(x+a)};$$

hence, (Arts. 217 & 218),

$$\int \frac{2axdx}{(x^2+a)^2} = \frac{2a^2}{x+a} + 2a\log(x+a).$$

254. Let us find the integral of

$$\frac{x^2dx}{x^3 - ax^2 - a^2x + a^3}.$$

By placing the denominator equal to 0, we see that, by making $x = a$, the terms will destroy each other: hence, a is a root of the equation, and $x - a$ a factor. Dividing by $x - a$, the quotient is $x^2 - a^2$: hence, the fraction may be placed under the form

$$\frac{x^2dx}{(x^2-a^2)(x-a)} = \frac{x^2dx}{(x+a)(x-a)(x-a)}$$
$$= \frac{x^2dx}{(x-a)^2(x+a)}.$$

Let us now make

$$\frac{x^2}{(x-a)^2(x+a)} = \frac{A}{(x-a)^2} + \frac{A'}{(x-a)} + \frac{B}{x+a}.$$

Reducing the terms of the second member to a common denominator, we have

$$\frac{x^2}{(x-a)^2(x+a)} = \frac{A(x+a) + A'(x^2-a^2) + B(x-a)^2}{(x-a)^2(x+a)};$$

and developing, and comparing the coefficients of the like

powers of x, we obtain the equations

$$A' + B = 1, \qquad A - 2Ba = 0, \qquad Aa - A'a^2 + Ba^2 = 0.$$

Multiplying the first equation by a^2, and adding it to the third, we have

$$Aa + 2Ba^2 = a^2;$$

then multiplying the second by a, and adding it to the last, we have

$$a^2 = 2Aa, \quad \text{and consequently,} \quad A = \frac{1}{2}a;$$

substituting this value of A, we find

$$B = \frac{1}{4} \quad \text{and} \quad A' = \frac{3}{4}.$$

Substituting these values of A, A', and B, we have

$$\frac{x^2dx}{(x-a)^2(x+a)} = \frac{adx}{2(x-a)^2} + \frac{3dx}{4(x-a)} + \frac{dx}{4(x+a)},$$

and consequently,

$$\int \frac{x^2dx}{x^3 - ax^2 - a^2x + a^3} = -\frac{a}{2(x-a)} + \frac{3}{4}\log(x-a) + \frac{1}{4}\log(x+a) + C.$$

255. We can integrate, in a similar manner, when the denominator contains sets of equal roots. Let us take, as an example,

$$\frac{adx}{(x^2-1)^2} = \frac{adx}{(x-1)^2(x+1)^2}.$$

Make

$$\frac{a}{(x-1)^2(x+1)^2}=\frac{A}{(x-1)^2}+\frac{A'}{x-1}+\frac{B}{(x+1)^2}+\frac{B'}{x+1},$$

reducing the second member to a common denominator, we find the numerator equal to

$$A(x+1)^2+A'(x-1)(x+1)^2+B(x-1)^2+B'(x+1)(x-1)^2;$$

and comparing the coefficients with those of the numerator of the first member, we have the following equations:

$$\begin{aligned} A'+B'&=0,\\ A+A'+B-B'&=0,\\ 2A-A'-2B-B'&=0,\\ A-A'+B+B'&=a. \end{aligned}$$

Combining the first and third equations, we find $A=B$; and combining the second and fourth, gives $2A+2B=a$: hence, we have

$$A=B=\frac{a}{4},\quad A'=-\frac{a}{4},\quad B'=\frac{a}{4};$$

consequently, the given differential becomes

$$\frac{1}{4}a\left[\frac{dx}{(x-1)^2}+\frac{dx}{(x+1)^2}-\frac{dx}{x-1}+\frac{dx}{x+1}\right],$$

and by integrating,

$$\int\frac{adx}{(x^2-1)^2}=\frac{1}{4}a\left[-\frac{1}{x-1}-\frac{1}{x+1}-\log(x-1)+\log(x+1)\right]+C.$$

256. If an equation of the second degree has imaginary roots, the quantity under the radical sign will be essentially

negative (Alg. Art. 144), and the roots will be of the form

$$x = +a + b\sqrt{-1}, \qquad x = +a - b\sqrt{-1},$$

and the two binomial factors corresponding to the roots will be

$$(x + a - b\sqrt{-1})(x + a + b\sqrt{-1}) = x^2 + 2ax + a^2 + b^2.$$

Hence, for each set of imaginary roots which arise from placing the denominator of the fraction equal to 0, there will be a factor of the second degree of the form

$$x^2 + 2ax + a^2 + b^2.$$

257. If the imaginary roots are equal, we shall have,

$$a = 0, \quad x = +b\sqrt{-1}, \quad x = -b\sqrt{-1},$$

and the factor will become $x^2 + b^2$.

In the equation,

$$x^2 - 6cx + 10c^2 = 0,$$

the roots are,

$$x = 3c + c\sqrt{-1}, \quad x = 3c - c\sqrt{-1};$$

comparing these values of x with the general form, we have

$$a = -3c \qquad b = c,$$

and the given equation takes the form

$$x^2 - 6cx + 9c^2 + c^2 = 0.$$

Comparing the roots of the equation,

$$x^2 + 4x + 12 = 0,$$

with the values of x in the general form, we have

$$a = 2, \qquad b = \sqrt{8},$$

and the equation may be written under the form

$$x^2+4x+4+8=0.$$

258. Let us first consider the case in which the denominator of the fraction to be integrated contains but one set of imaginary roots. The fraction will then be of the form,

$$\frac{P+Qx+Rx^2+Sx^3+\text{ \&c.}}{(x-a)(x-b)\ldots.(x-h)(x^2+2ax+a^2+b^2)}dx,$$

which may be placed under the form

$$\frac{Adx}{x-a}+\frac{Bdx}{x-b}\ldots.+\frac{Hdx}{x-h}+\frac{Mx+N}{x^2+2ax+a^2+b^2}dx.$$

The first three fractions may be integrated by the methods already explained: it therefore only remains to integrate the last, which may be written under the form

$$\frac{Mx+N}{(x+a)^2+b^2}dx.$$

If we make $x+a=z$, the expression becomes

$$\frac{Mz+N-Ma}{z^2+b^2}dz,$$

and making $N-Ma=P$, it reduces to

$$\frac{Mz+P}{z^2+b^2}dz,$$

which may be divided into the parts,

$$\frac{Mzdz}{z^2+b^2}+\frac{Pdz}{z^2+b^2},$$

which may be integrated separately.

To integrate the first term, we have

$$\int \frac{Mzdz}{z^2+b^2} = M\int \frac{zdz}{z^2+b^2} = \frac{M}{2}\int \frac{2zdz}{z^2+b^2},$$

in which the numerator, $2zdz$, is equal to the differential of the denominator: hence (Art. 218),

$$\int \frac{Mzdz}{z^2+b^2} = \frac{M}{2}\log(z^2+b^2);$$

or by substituting for z its value, $x+a$,

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{Mzdz}{z^2+b^2} &= \frac{M}{2}\log[(x+a)^2+b^2] \\ &= \frac{M}{2}\log(x^2+2ax+a^2+b^2) \\ &= M\log\sqrt{x^2+2ax+a^2+b^2}.\end{aligned}$$

Integrating the second term by Art. 224, gives

$$\int \frac{Pdz}{z^2+b^2} = \frac{P}{b}\text{tang}^{-1}\left(\frac{z}{b}\right),$$

or by substituting for z its value, $x+a$, and for P, $N-Ma$, we have

$$\int \frac{Pdz}{z^2+b^2} = \frac{N-Ma}{b}\text{tang}^{-1}\left(\frac{x+a}{b}\right);$$

and finally,

$$\int \frac{Mx+N}{x^2+2ax+a^2+b^2}dx =$$

$$M\log\sqrt{x^2+2ax+a^2+b^2} + \frac{N-Ma}{b}\text{tang}^{-1}\left(\frac{x+a}{b}\right).$$

259. Let us take, as an example, the fraction

$$\frac{c+fx}{x^3-1}dx,$$

in which, if $+1$ be substituted for x, the denominator will reduce to 0: hence, $x-1$ is a factor of the denominator. Dividing by this factor, the fraction may be put under the form

$$\frac{c+fx}{(x-1)(x^2+x+1)}dx,$$

in which x^2+x+1 is the product of the imaginary factors. Placing this product equal to 0, finding the roots of the equation, and comparing them with the general values in the form

$$x^2+2ax+a^2+b^2=0,$$

we find

$$a=\frac{1}{2} \qquad b=\sqrt{\frac{3}{4}}.$$

We may place the given fraction under the form

$$\frac{c+fx}{(x-1)(x^2+x+1)}=\frac{A}{x-1}+\frac{Mx+N}{x^2+x+1};$$

reducing the second member to a common denominator, and comparing the coefficients of x in the numerator with those of x in the numerator of the first member, we obtain

$$A=\frac{c+f}{3}, \qquad M=-\frac{c+f}{3}, \qquad N=\frac{f-2c}{3}.$$

Substituting these values of M and N, as also those of a and b, in the general formula of Art. 258, and recollecting that

$$\int\frac{Adx}{x-1}=\frac{c+f}{3}\int\frac{dx}{x-1}=\frac{c+f}{3}\log(x-1),$$

we find

$$\int \frac{c+fx}{x^3-1}dx = \frac{c+f}{3}\log(x-1) - \frac{c+f}{3}\log\sqrt{x^2+x+1}$$
$$+\frac{f-c}{\sqrt{3}}\tang^{-1}\left[\frac{x+\frac{1}{2}}{\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}}\right]+C.$$

260. The equation which arises from placing the denominator of the fraction equal to 0, may give several pairs of imaginary roots respectively equal to each other In this case, the factor $x^2 \pm 2ax + a^2 + b^2$ will enter several times into the denominator, or will take the form

$$(x^2+2ax+a^2+b^2)^p;$$

and hence, that part of the fraction which contains the pairs of equal and imaginary roots, must be placed under the form (Art. 251)

$$\frac{H+Kx}{(x^2+2ax+a^2+b^2)^p} + \frac{H'+K'x}{(x^2+2ax+a^2+b^2)^{p-1}}$$
$$+\frac{H''+K''x}{(x^2+2ax+a^2+b^2)^{p-2}} \cdots\cdots + \frac{H^n+K^nx}{x^2+2ax+a^2+b^2}.$$

Now, reducing to a common denominator, and comparing the coefficients, we find the values of the constants

$$H,\quad K,\quad H',\quad K',\quad H'',\quad K'' \ldots\ldots H^n,\quad K^n \ldots$$

after which, multiply each term by dx, and then integrate the terms separately.

Since all the terms are of the same general form, it will only be necessary to integrate the first term, which may be written under the form

$$\frac{H+Kx}{[(x+a)^2+b^2]^p}dx;$$

which, if we make $x+a=z$, will reduce to

$$\frac{H-Ka+Kz}{(z^2+b^2)^p}dx,$$

and making $M=H-Ka$, it will become

$$\frac{M+Kz}{(b^2+z^2)^p}dz=\frac{Kzdz}{(b^2+z^2)^p}dz+\frac{Mdz}{(b^2+z^2)^p}.$$

The first term of the second member may be placed under the form

$$K\int(b^2+z^2)^{-p}zdz,$$

and integrating by the formula of Art. 217, we have

$$\int\frac{Kzdz}{(b^2+z^2)^p}=\frac{1}{2}\frac{K}{(1-p)}\frac{1}{(b^2+z^2)^{p-1}}+C.$$

It then only remains to integrate the second term

$$\frac{Mdz}{(b^2+z^2)^p}=M\int(b^2+z^2)^{-p}dz.$$

By comparing the second member of this equation with formula (D), Art. 242, we see that it will become identical with the first member of that formula, by supposing

$$m=1, \quad a=b^2, \quad b=1, \quad \text{and} \quad n=2;$$

and hence, by means of that formula, the exponent $-p$ may be successively diminished by unity until it becomes -1, when the integration of the term will depend on that of

$$\frac{dz}{b^2+z^2}.$$

But we have already found (Art. 224),

$$\int\frac{dz^2}{b^2+z^2}=\frac{1}{b}\text{tang}^{-1}\left(\frac{z}{b}\right);$$

and hence the fraction may be considered as entirely integrated.

261. It follows, from the preceding discussion, that the integration of all rational fractions depends on the following forms:

1st. $\int x^m dx = \frac{x^{m+1}}{m+1}$.

2d. $\int \frac{dx}{a \pm x} = \pm \log(a \pm x)$.

3d. $\int \frac{dx}{a^2 + x^2} = \frac{1}{a} \text{tang}^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)$.

Integration of Irrational Fractions.

262. The method of integrating rational fractions having been explained, we may consider an irrational fraction as integrated when it is reduced to a rational form.

263. Every irrational fraction in which the radical quantities are monomials, may be reduced to a rational form.

Let us take, as an example,

$$\frac{\sqrt{x} - \frac{1}{3}a}{\sqrt[3]{x} - \sqrt{x}} dx, \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{x^{\frac{1}{2}} - \frac{1}{3}a}{x^{\frac{1}{3}} - x^{\frac{1}{2}}}.$$

Having found the least common multiple of the indices of the roots, (which indices are the denominators of the fractional exponents,) substitute for x a new variable, z, with this common multiple for an exponent, and the fraction will then become rational in terms of z.

In the example given, the least common multiple is 6; hence we have

$$x = z^6 \quad \text{and} \quad \sqrt{x} = z^3, \quad \sqrt[3]{x} = z^2, \quad dx = 6z^5 dz;$$

and substituting these values, we obtain

$$\frac{\sqrt{x} - \frac{1}{3}a}{\sqrt[3]{x} - \sqrt{x}} = \frac{z^3 - \frac{1}{3}a}{z^2 - z^3} 6z^5 dz = \frac{6z^6 - 2az^3}{1 - z} dz;$$

an expression which may be integrated by rational fractions; after which we may substitute for z its value, $\sqrt[6]{x}$.

264. If the quantity under the radical sign is a polynomial, the fraction cannot, in general, be reduced to a rational form. We can, however, reduce to a rational form every expression of the form

$$X(\sqrt{A + Bx \pm Cx^2})dx,$$

in which X is supposed to be a rational function of x.

If we write a denominator 1, and then multiply the numerator and denominator by $\sqrt{A + Bx \pm Cx^2}$, the expression will take the form

$$\frac{X' dx}{\sqrt{A + Bx \pm Cx^2}};$$

in which X' is a rational function of x: hence the two forms are essentially the same.

If now, we can find rational values for $\sqrt{A + Bx \pm Cx^2}$ and for dx, in terms of a new variable, the expression will take a rational form.

There are two cases to be considered: 1st., when the coefficient of x^2 is positive; and, 2d, when it is negative.

Let us consider them separately. First, make

$$\sqrt{A+Bx+Cx^2} = \sqrt{C}\sqrt{\frac{A}{C}+\frac{B}{C}x+x^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{C}\,\sqrt{a+bx+x^2},$$

in which $a=\frac{A}{C}$, $b=\frac{B}{C}$.

In order to find rational values for dx and $\sqrt{a+bx+x^2}$, place

$$\sqrt{a+bx+x^2} = x+z, \quad (1)$$

from which, by squaring both members, we find

$$a+bx = 2xz+z^2, \quad (2)$$

and hence,

$$x=\frac{z^2-a}{b-2z}; \quad (3)$$

and substituting this value in equation (1),

$$\sqrt{a+bx+x^2} = \frac{z^2-a}{b-2z}+z;$$

and by reducing to the same denominator,

$$\sqrt{a+bx+x^2} = -\frac{z^2-bz+a}{b-2z}. \quad (4)$$

Let us now find the value of dx in terms of z. For this purpose we will differentiate equation (2), we then find

$$bdx = 2xdz+2zdx+2zdz;$$

whence we have

$$(b-2z)dx = 2(x+z)dz;$$

and by subtracting equations (1) and (4), and substituting for $x+z$ the value thus found, we have

$$(b-2z)dx = -\frac{2(z^2-bz+a)}{b-2z}dz,$$

and

$$dx = -\frac{2(z^2-bz+a)}{(b-2z)^2}dz. \quad (5)$$

265. Let us take, as an example,

$$\frac{dx}{x\sqrt{A+Bx+Cx^2}},$$

which may be written under the form

$$\frac{dx}{\sqrt{C}\times x\sqrt{a+bx+x^2}};$$

and substituting the values of $\sqrt{a+bx+x^2}$ and dx, from equations (4) and (5), we have

$$\frac{dx}{\sqrt{a+bx+x^2}} = \frac{2dz}{b-2z};$$

and multiplying the denominator by the value of x, in equation (3),

$$\frac{dx}{x\sqrt{a+bx+x^2}} = \frac{2dz}{z^2-a};$$

and then by $\sqrt{C}$, we have

$$\frac{dx}{\sqrt{C}\times x\sqrt{a+bx+x^2}}, \text{ or } \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{A+Bx+Cx^2}} = \frac{2dz}{(z^2-a)\sqrt{C}},$$

which is a rational form, and may be integrated by the methods already explained.

266. Let us take, as a second example,

$$\frac{dx}{\sqrt{h+c^2x^2}},$$

which may be placed under the form

$$\frac{dx}{c\sqrt{\frac{h}{c^2}+x^2}};$$

and comparing this with the form of Art. 264, gives

$$c=\sqrt{C}, \quad b=0, \quad \frac{h}{c^2}=a.$$

Hence,

$$\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{h+c^2x^2}}=\frac{1}{c}\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{a+x^2}}.$$

Having placed

$$\sqrt{a+x^2}=z+x,$$

we found, Art. 264, equations (5) and (4),

$$dx=-\frac{z^2+a}{2z^2}dz, \quad \sqrt{a+x^2}=\frac{z^2+a}{2z};$$

hence

$$\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{a+x^2}}=\int-\frac{dz}{z}=-\log z.$$

Substituting for z its value, and multiplying by $\frac{1}{c}$, we have

$$\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{h+c^2x^2}}=-\frac{1}{c}\log[\sqrt{a+x^2}-x]+C,$$

and substituting for a its value, $\frac{h}{c^2}$, we have

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{h+c^2x^2}} = -\frac{1}{c}\log\left[\frac{1}{c}(\sqrt{h+c^2x^2}-cx)\right]+C$$

$$= -\frac{1}{c}\log\frac{1}{c} - \frac{1}{c}\log(\sqrt{h+c^2x^2}-cx)+C.$$

But since the difference of the squares of the two terms within the parenthesis is equal to h, it follows that if h be divided by the difference of the terms, the quotient will be their sum (Alg. Art. 59). But the division may be effected by subtracting their logarithms. Let us, then, add to, and subtract from, the second member of the equation, $\frac{1}{c}\log h$. We shall then have,

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{h+c^2x^2}} = -\frac{1}{c}\log\frac{1}{c} - \frac{1}{c}\log h + \frac{1}{c}\log h - \frac{1}{c}\log(\sqrt{h+c^2x^2}-cx)+C;$$

or by representing the three constants $\frac{1}{c}\log\frac{1}{c} - \frac{1}{c}\log h$, and C, by a single letter C, we have

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{h+c^2x^2}} = \frac{1}{c}\log(\sqrt{h+c^2x^2}+cx)+C.$$

267. Let us take, as a third example,

$$dx\sqrt{m^2+x^2}.$$

Comparing this with the general form, we find

$$a = m^2 \quad \text{and} \quad b = 0;$$

hence (Art. 264),

$$\sqrt{m^2+x^2} = \frac{z^2+m^2}{2z} \quad \text{and} \quad dx = -\frac{(z^2+m^2)}{2z^2}dz;$$

and consequently,

$$dx\sqrt{m^2+x^2} = -\frac{(z^2+m^2)^2}{4z^3}dz,$$

which is rational in z; and, having found the integral in z, substitute the value of z in terms of x.

958. Let us now consider the case in which the coefficient of x^2 is negative. We have

$$\sqrt{A+Bx-Cx^2} = \sqrt{C}\sqrt{\frac{A}{C}+\frac{B}{C}x-x^2}$$
$$= \sqrt{C}\sqrt{a+bx-x^2}.$$

If now, we make as before,

$$\sqrt{a+bx-x^2} = x+z,$$

and square both members, the second powers of x in each member will not cancel, as before; and therefore, x cannot be expressed rationally in terms of z. We must, therefore, place the value of the radical under another form. We will remark, in the first place, that the binomial $a+bx-x^2$, may be decomposed into two rational factors of the first degree. For, if we make

$$x^2-bx-a=0,$$

and designate the roots of the equation by α and α', we have (Alg. Art. 142)

$$(x^2-bx-a) = (x-\alpha)(x-\alpha'),$$

and consequently, by changing the signs,

$$(a+bx-x^2) = -(x-\alpha)(x-\alpha') = (x-\alpha)(\alpha'-x);$$

and placing the second member under the radical, we may make

$$\sqrt{(x-\alpha)(\alpha'-x)} = (x-\alpha)z\,; \quad (1)$$

squaring both members

$$(x-\alpha)(\alpha'-x) = (x-\alpha)^2 z^2,$$

and by suppressing the common factor $x-\alpha$,

$$\alpha'-x = (x-\alpha)z^2, \quad (2)$$

whence,

$$x = \frac{\alpha'+\alpha z^2}{1+z^2},$$

and

$$x-\alpha = \frac{\alpha'+\alpha z^2}{1+z^2} - \alpha\,;$$

or by reducing,

$$x-\alpha = \frac{\alpha'-\alpha}{1+z^2}\,; \quad (3)$$

which, being substituted in the second member of equation (1), gives

$$\sqrt{(x-\alpha)(\alpha'-x)} = \frac{\alpha'-\alpha}{1+z^2}z\,; \quad (4)$$

and by differentiating equation (3), we obtain

$$dx = -\frac{2(\alpha'-\alpha)}{(1+z^2)^2}zdz. \quad (5)$$

269. To apply this method to a particular example of the form

$$\frac{dx}{\sqrt{a+bx-x^2}},$$

substitute the values of $\sqrt{a+bx-x^2}$ and dx, found in equations (4) and (5): we find

$$\frac{dx}{\sqrt{a+bx-x^2}} = -\frac{2(\alpha'-\alpha)z}{(1+z^2)z\sqrt{\frac{(\alpha'-\alpha)}{1+z^2}}}dz = -\frac{2dz}{1+z^2};$$

hence

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a+bx-x^2}} = -2\tan^{-1}z + C;$$

or, by substituting for z its value from equation (1),

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a+bx-x^2}} = C - 2\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\sqrt{(x-\alpha)(\alpha'-x)}}{(x-\alpha)}\right)$$

$$= C - 2\tan^{-1}\sqrt{\frac{\alpha'-x}{x-\alpha}}.$$

270. If, in the last formula, we make

$$a = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad b = 0,$$

the trinomial under the radical will become $1-x^2$, and the roots of the equation $x^2-1=0$ are

$$\alpha = -1 \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha' = 1.$$

Substituting these values, and the general formula becomes

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} = C - 2\tan^{-1}\sqrt{\frac{1-x}{1+x}};$$

and if we suppose the integral to be 0 when $x=0$, we shall have

$$0 = C - 2\tan^{-1}(1)$$

$$= C - 2(45^\circ) \quad \text{(Trig. Art. VIII)}$$

$$= C - 90^\circ: \quad \text{hence} \quad C = \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

Substituting this value, and we have

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} = \frac{\pi}{2} - 2\,\text{tang}^{-1}\sqrt{\frac{1-x}{1+x}}.$$

271. We have already seen (Art. 219) that

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} = \sin^{-1}x;$$

and hence,

$$\frac{\pi}{2} - 2\,\text{tang}^{-1}\sqrt{\frac{1-x}{1+x}}$$

should also represent the arc of which x is the sine.

To prove this, we have (Trig. Art. XXV)

$$\text{tang}\,2A = \frac{2\,\text{tang}\,A}{1-\text{tang}^2 A}.$$

Substituting for $\text{tang}\,A$, $\sqrt{\frac{1-x}{1+x}}$, and reducing, we have

$$\text{tang}\,2A = \frac{\sqrt{1-x^2}}{x};$$

that is, twice the arc whose tangent is $\sqrt{\frac{1-x}{1+x}}$ is equal to the arc whose tangent is $\frac{\sqrt{1-x^2}}{x}$.

But the arc whose tangent is $\frac{\sqrt{1-x^2}}{x}$, is the complement of the arc whose tangent is $\frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$, (Trig. Art. XVIII); and this arc has x for its sine. Hence, either member of the equation

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} = \frac{\pi}{2} - 2\tan^{-1}\sqrt{\frac{1-x}{1+x}},$$

represents the arc whose sign is x.

272. Let us take, as a last example, the differential

$$dx\sqrt{2ax-x^2}.$$

In comparing this with the general form, we find (Art. 268)

$$\alpha = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha' = 2a;$$

and Art. 268, equations (4) and (5), give

$$\sqrt{x(2a-x)} = \frac{2az}{1+z^2}, \quad dx = -\frac{4az}{(1+z^2)^2}dz.$$

Substituting these values, we have

$$dx\sqrt{2ax-x^2} = -\frac{8a^2z^2dz}{(1+z^2)^3};$$

which may be integrated by the method of rational fractions.

Rectification of Plane Curves.

273. The rectification of a curve is the expression of its length. When this expression can be found in finite terms, the curve is said to be *rectifiable*, and its length may be represented by a straight line.

274. The differential of the arc of a curve, referred to rectangular co-ordinates, is (Art. 128)

$$dz = \sqrt{dx^2+dy^2}.$$

Hence, if it be required to rectify a curve, given by its equation,

1st. *Differentiate the equation of the curve.*

2d. *Combine the differential equation thus found with the given equation, and find the value of* dx^2 *or* dy^2 *in terms of the other variable.*

3d. *Substitute the value thus found in the differential of the arc, which will then involve but one variable and its differential. Then, by integrating, we shall find the length of the arc, estimated from a given point, in terms of one of its co-ordinates.*

275. Let us take, as a first example, the common parabola, of which the equation is

$$y^2 = 2px.$$

Differentiating, and dividing by 2, we have

$$ydy = pdx,$$

and consequently,

$$dx^2 = \frac{y^2}{p^2}\, dy^2;$$

substituting this value in the differential of the arc, we have

$$dz = \sqrt{dy^2 + \frac{y^2}{p^2} dy^2}$$

$$= \frac{1}{p} dy \sqrt{p^2 + y^2};$$

which, being integrated by formula (B) Art. 239, gives, by supposing $m = 1$, $a = p^2$, $b = 1$, $n = 2$, $p = \frac{1}{2}$,

$$\int dy\sqrt{p^2+y^2} = \frac{y\sqrt{p^2+y^2}}{2} + \frac{p^2}{2}\int \frac{dy}{\sqrt{p^2+y^2}};$$

and integrating the second term by the formula of Art. 266, we have, after making $h=p^2$, $c^2=1$,

$$\int \frac{dy}{\sqrt{p^2+y^2}} = \log(\sqrt{p^2+y^2}+y);$$

and consequently,

$$z=\frac{1}{p}\int dy\sqrt{p^2+y^2} = \frac{y\sqrt{p^2+y^2}}{2p} + \frac{p}{2}\log(\sqrt{p^2+y^2}+y)+C.$$

If we estimate the arc from the vertex of the parabola, we shall have

$$y=0 \quad \text{for} \quad z=0: \quad \text{hence}$$

$$0=\frac{p}{2}\log p + C \qquad \text{or} \qquad C=-\frac{p}{2}\log p;$$

and consequently,

$$z=\frac{y\sqrt{p^2+y^2}}{2p} + \frac{p}{2}\log\left(\frac{\sqrt{p^2+y^2}+y}{p}\right);$$

and hence, the value of the arc, for a given ordinate y, can only be found approximatively.

276. The curves represented by the equation

$$y^n = px^m,$$

are called *parabolas*. This equation may be placed under the form

$$y = p^{\frac{1}{n}} x^{\frac{m}{n}};$$

or by placing $p^{\frac{1}{n}} = p'$, and $\frac{m}{n} = n'$, we have

$$y = p' x^{n'};$$

or finally, by omitting the accents, the form becomes

$$y = px^n.$$

By differentiating, we have

$$dy = npx^{n-1}dx,$$

and by substituting this value of dy in the differential of the arc, we have

$$z = \int (1 + n^2 p^2 x^{2n-2})^{\frac{1}{2}} dx.$$

Now this expression will have an exact integral when $\frac{1}{2n-2}$ is an entire number (Art. 235). If we designate such number by i, we have for the condition of an exact integral

$$\frac{1}{2n-2} = i,$$

which gives

$$n = \frac{2i+1}{2i};$$

substituting this value for n, we have

$$y = px^{\frac{2i+1}{2i}};$$

or

$$y^{2i} = p^{2i} x^{2i+1},$$

which expresses the relation that exists between y and x when the length of the arc can be found in finite terms.

277. If we make $i = 1$, we have $n = \frac{3}{2}$, and

$$y^2 = p^2 x^3,$$

which is the equation of the cubic parabola.

Under this supposition, the arc becomes (Art. 217)

$$z = \int (1 + n^2 p^2 x^{2n-2})^{\frac{1}{2}} dx = \frac{8}{27p^2}\left(1 + \frac{9}{4}p^2 x\right)^{\frac{3}{2}} + C;$$

and hence, the cubic parabola is rectifiable (Art. 273).

If we estimate the arc from the vertex of the curve, we have $x = 0$, for $z = 0$: hence

$$0 = \frac{8}{27p^2} + C, \quad \text{or} \quad C = -\frac{8}{27p^2};$$

and consequently,

$$z = \frac{8}{27p^2}\left[\left(1 + \frac{9}{4}p^2 x\right)^{\frac{3}{2}} - 1\right].$$

278. If the origin of co-ordinates is at the centre of the circle, the equation of the circumference is

$$R^2 = x^2 + y^2,$$

and the value of the arc,

$$z = R\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{R^2 - x^2}}.$$

If the origin be placed on the curve

$$y^2 = 2Rx - x^2,$$

and

$$z = R\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{2Rx - x^2}},$$

both of which expressions may be integrated by series, and the length of the arc found approximatively.

279. It remains to rectify the transcendental curves.

The differential equation of the cycloid is (Art. 182)

$$dx = \frac{ydy}{\sqrt{2ry - y^2}},$$

which gives

$$dx^2 = \frac{y^2 dy^2}{2ry - y^2}.$$

Substituting this value of dx^2 in the differential of the arc, we obtain

$$dz = \sqrt{dy^2 + \frac{y^2 dy^2}{2ry - y^2}} = dy \sqrt{\frac{2ry}{2ry - y^2}}$$

$$= dy \sqrt{\frac{2r}{2r - y}} = (2r)^{\frac{1}{2}}(2r - y)^{-\frac{1}{2}} dy.$$

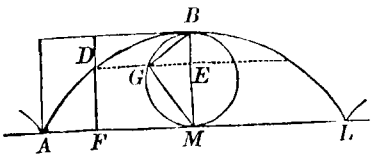
But (Art. 217)

$$\int (2r - y)^{-\frac{1}{2}} dy = -2(2r - y)^{\frac{1}{2}} + C;$$

and hence,

$$z = -(2r)^{\frac{1}{2}} 2\sqrt{2r - y} + C = -2\sqrt{2r(2r - y)} + C.$$

If now, we estimate the arc z from B, the point at which $y = 2r$, we shall have, for $z = 0$, $y = 2r$; hence



$$0 = 0 + C, \quad \text{or} \quad C = 0,$$

and consequently, the true integral will be

$$z = -2\sqrt{2r(2r - y)};$$

the second member being negative, since the arc is a decreasing function of the ordinate y (Art. 31).

If now, we suppose y to decrease until it becomes equal to any ordinate, as $DF = ME$, DB will be represented by z, or by $\sqrt{2r(2r - y)}$, and $BE = 2r - y$.

But $\overline{BG}^2 = BM \times BE$: hence

$$BG = \sqrt{2r(2r - y)},$$

and consequently,

$$BD = 2BG;$$

or *the arc of the cycloid, estimated from the vertex of the axis, is equal to twice the corresponding chord of the generating circle: hence, the arc* BDA *is equal to twice the diameter* BM; *and the curve* ADBL *is equal to four times the diameter of the generating circle.*

280. The differential of the arc of a spiral, referred to polar co-ordinates, is (Art. 202)

$$dz = \sqrt{du^2 + u^2 dt^2}.$$

Taking the general equation of the spirals

$$u = at^n,$$

we have $$du^2 = n^2 a^2 t^{2n-2} dt^2;$$

and substituting for du^2 and u^2 their values, we obtain

$$dz = at^{n-1} dt \sqrt{n^2 + t^2}.$$

If we make $n = 1$, we have the spiral of Archimedes, (Art. 191), and the equation becomes

$$dz = adt\sqrt{1 + t^2};$$

which is of the same form as that of the arc of the common parabola (Art. 275).

281. In the logarithmic spiral, we have $t = \log u$, and the differential of the arc becomes

$$dz = du\sqrt{2} + C;$$

and if we estimate the arc from the pole,

$$z = u\sqrt{2}.$$

Consequently, the length of the arc estimated from the pole to any point of the curve, is equal to the diagonal of a square described on the radius-vector, although the number of revolutions of the radius-vector between these two points is infinite.

Of the Quadrature of Curves.

282. The quadrature of a curve is the expression of its area. When this expression can be found in finite terms, the curve is said to be *quadrable*, and may be represented by an equivalent square.

283. If s represents the area of the segment of a curve, and x and y the co-ordinates of any point, we have seen (Art. 130), that

$$ds = ydx.$$

To apply this formula to a given curve:

1st. *Find from the equation of the curve the value of* y *in terms of* x, *or the value of* dx *in terms of* y, *which values will be expressed under the forms*

$$y = F(x), \quad \text{or} \quad dx = F(y)dy.$$

2d. *Substitute the value of* y, *or the value of* dx, *in the differential of the area: we shall have*

$$ds = F(x)dx, \quad \text{or} \quad ds = F(y)dy:$$

the integral of the first form will give the area of the curve in terms of the abscissa, and the integral of the second will give the area in terms of the ordinate.

284. Let us take, as a first example, the family of parabolas of which the equation is

$$y^n = px^m:$$

we shall then have

$$y = p^{\frac{1}{n}} x^{\frac{m}{n}},$$

and

$$\int F(x)dx = \int p^{\frac{1}{n}} x^{\frac{m}{n}} dx = \frac{np^{\frac{1}{n}}}{m+n} x^{\frac{m+n}{n}} = \frac{n}{m+n} xy + C;$$

by substituting y for its value, $p^{\frac{1}{n}} x^{\frac{m}{n}}$.

If, instead of substituting the value of y in the differential of the area

$$ydx,$$

we find the value of dx from the equation

$$y^n = px^m,$$

we have

$$dx = \frac{n}{m} \frac{y^{\frac{n}{m}-1}}{p^{\frac{1}{m}}} dy,$$

and consequently,

$$\int ydx = \frac{n}{m} \int \frac{y^{\frac{n}{m}}}{p^{\frac{1}{m}}} dy = \frac{n}{m+n} \frac{y^{\frac{n}{m}+1}}{p^{\frac{1}{m}}} = \frac{n}{m+n} xy:$$

by substituting x for its value, $\frac{y^{\frac{n}{m}}}{p^{\frac{1}{m}}}$, which is the same result as before found.

Hence, *the area of any portion of a parabola is equal to the rectangle described on the abscissa and ordinate*

multiplied by the ratio $\frac{n}{m+n}$. The parabolas are therefore quadrable.

In the common parabola, $n=2$, $m=1$, and we have

$$\int F(x)dx = \frac{2}{3}xy,$$

that is, *the area of a segment is equal to two thirds of the area of the rectangle described on the abscissa and ordinate.*

285. If, in the equation

$$y^n = px^m,$$

we make $n=1$, and $m=1$, it will represent a straight line passing through the origin of co-ordinates, and we shall have

$$\int F(x)dx = \frac{1}{2}xy,$$

which proves that *the area of a triangle is equal to half the product of the base and perpendicular.*

286. It is frequently necessary to find the integral or function, between certain limits of the variable on which it depends.

A particular notation has been adopted to express such integrals.

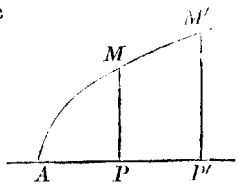
Resuming the equation of the common parabola

$$y^2 = 2px,$$

and substituting in the equation ydx the value of $dx = \frac{ydy}{p}$, we have

$$\int ydx = \frac{1}{p}\int y^2dy = \frac{y^3}{3p} + C;$$

or, if the area be estimated from the vertex A, we have $C = 0$, and



$$\int y dx = \frac{y^3}{3p}.$$

If now, we wish the area to terminate at any ordinate $PM = b$, we shall then take the integral between the limits of $y = 0$ and $y = b$; and, to express that in the differential equation, we write

$$\frac{1}{p}\int_0^b y^2 dy = \frac{b^3}{3p};$$

which is read, integral of $y^2 dy$ between the limits $y = 0$ and $y = b$.

If we wish the area between the ordinates $MP = b$, $M'P' = c$, we must integrate between the limits $y = b$, $y = c$. We first integrate between 0 and each limit, viz.:

$$AMP = \frac{1}{p}\int_0^b y^2 dy = \frac{b^3}{3p},$$

$$AMM'P' = \frac{1}{p}\int_0^c y^2 dy = \frac{c^3}{3p};$$

we then have

$$PMM'P = AMM'P' - AMP = \frac{1}{p}\int_b^c y^2 dy$$

$$= \frac{c^3}{3p} - \frac{b^3}{3p} = \frac{1}{3p}(c^3 - b^3).$$

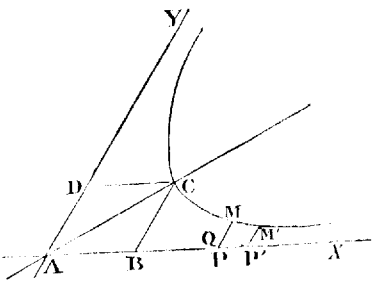
287. Let us now determine the area of any portion of the space included between the asymptotes and curve of an hyperbola.

The equation of the hyperbola referred to its asymptotes (An. Geom. Bk. VI, Prop. IX,) is

$$xy = M.$$

In the differential of the area of a curve ydx, x and y are estimated in parallels to co-ordinate axes, at right angles to each other.

The differential of the area $BCMP$, referred to the oblique axes AX, AY, is the parallelogram $PMM'P'$, of which $PM = y$ and $PP' = dx$.



If we designate the angle $YAX = MPX$ by β, we shall have

$$\text{area } PMM'P' = ydx \sin\beta;$$

and substituting for y its value $\frac{M}{x}$, and representing the area $BCMP$ by s, we have

$$ds = M \sin\beta \frac{dx}{x},$$

and

$$s = M \sin\beta \int \frac{dx}{x} = M \sin\beta \log x + C.$$

If AC is the semi-transverse axis of the hyperbola, and we make $AB = 1$, and estimate the area s from BC, we shall have, for $x = 1$, $s = 0$, and consequently $C = 0$; and the true integral will be

$$s = M \sin\beta \log x.$$

But, since $ABCD$ is a rhombus, and $M = AB \times BC$ (An. Geom. Bk. VI, Prop. IX, Sch. 2), and since $AB = 1$, we have $M = 1$, and consequently,

$$s = \sin\beta \log x.$$

Now, since s, which represents the space $BCMP$ for any abscissa x, is equal to the Naperian logarithm of x multiplied by the constant $\sin\beta$, s may be regarded as the logarithm of x taken in a system of which $\sin\beta$ is the modulus (Alg. Art. 251). Therefore, *any hyperbolic space* BCMP *is the logarithm of the corresponding abscissa* AP, *taken in the system whose modulus is the sine of the angle included between the asymptotes.*

If we would make the spaces the Naperian logarithms of the corresponding abscissas, we make $\sin\beta = 1$, which corresponds to the equilateral hyperbola. If we would make the spaces the common logarithms of the abscissas, make $\sin\beta = 0.43429945$, (Alg. Art. 255).

288. The equation of the circle, when the origin of coordinates is placed on the circumference, is

$$y^2 = 2rx - x^2, \quad \text{or} \quad y = \sqrt{2rx - x^2},$$

and hence, the differential of the area is

$$dx\sqrt{2rx - x^2};$$

and this will become, by making $x = r - u$,

$$-\int du(r^2 - u^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

If we integrate this expression by formula (B) Art. 239,

we have

$$-\int du(r^2-u^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} = -\frac{1}{2}u(r^2-u^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} - \frac{1}{2}r^2\int du(r^2-u^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2}u\sqrt{r^2-u^2} + \frac{1}{2}r^2\int\frac{-du}{\sqrt{r^2-u^2}}.$$

But we have (Art. 253)

$$\int\frac{-du}{\sqrt{r^2-u^2}} = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{u}{r}\right);$$

and placing for u its value

$$\int dx\sqrt{2rx-x^2} =$$

$$-\frac{1}{2}(r-x)\sqrt{2rx-x^2} + \frac{1}{2}r^2\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{r-x}{r}\right) + C;$$

and taking this integral between the limits $x=0$ and $x=2r$, we shall have the area of a semicircle.

For $x=0$, the area which is expressed in the first member becomes 0, the first term in the second member becomes 0, and the second term also becomes 0, since the arc whose cosine is 1, is 0: hence the constant $C=0$.

If we now make $x=2r$, the term

$$\frac{1}{2}(r-x)\sqrt{2rx-x^2}$$

reduces to 0, and the second term to

$$\frac{1}{2}r^2\cos^{-1}(-1) = \frac{1}{2}r^2\pi \quad \text{(Trig. Art. XIV)},$$

and consequently, the entire area is equal to $r^2\pi$, which

corresponds with a known result (Geom. Bk. V, Prop. XII, Cor. 2).

The equation of the ellipse, the origin of co-ordinates being at the vertex of the transverse axis (An. Geom. Bk. IV, Prop. I. Sch. 8), gives

$$y = \frac{B}{A}\sqrt{2Ax - x^2},$$

and consequently, the area of the semi-ellipse will be equal to

$$\int y dx = \frac{B}{A}\int dx\sqrt{2Ax - x^2}.$$

Integrating, as in the last example, between the limits $x = 0$, and $x = 2A$, and multiplying by 2, we find $AB\pi$ for the entire area. This corresponds with a known result (An. Geom. Bk. IV, Prop. XIII).

289. The differential equation of the cycloid (Art. 183) is

$$dx = \frac{ydy}{\sqrt{2ry - y^2}},$$

whence

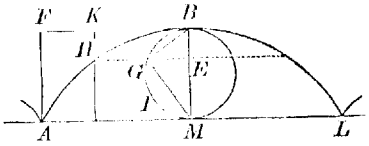
$$\int y dx = \int \frac{y^2 dy}{\sqrt{2ry - y^2}},$$

and by integrating twice by formula (E) Art. 243, it will reduce to $\int \frac{dy}{\sqrt{2ry - y^2}}$; and (Art. 226)

$$\int \frac{dy}{\sqrt{2ry - y^2}} = \text{ver-sin}^{-1}\left(\frac{y}{r}\right).$$

But we may determine the area of the cycloid in a more simple manner by introducing the exterior segment $AFKH$,

Regarding FB as a line of abscissas, and signating any ordinate as KH, by $z = 2r - y$, we shall have



$$d(AFKH) = z\,dx.$$

But

$$z\,dx = \frac{(2r-y)\,y\,dy}{\sqrt{2ry-y^2}} = dy\sqrt{2ry-y^2},$$

whence

$$AFKH = \int dy\sqrt{2ry-y^2} + C.$$

But this integral expresses the area of the segment of a circle, of which the abscissa is y and radius r (Art. 288): that is, of the segment $MIGE$. If now, we estimate the area of the segment from M, where $y = 0$, and the area $AFKH$ from AF, in which case the area $AFKH = 0$ for $y = 0$, we shall have

$$AFKH = MIGE;$$

and taking the integral between the limits $y = 0$ and $y = 2r$, we have

$$AFB = \text{semicircle } MIGB,$$

and consequently,

$$\text{area } AHBM = AFBM - MIGB.$$

But the base of the rectangle $AFBM$ is equal to the semicircumference of the generating circle, and the altitude is equal to the diameter, hence its area is equal to four times the area of the semicircle $MIGB$; therefore,

$$\text{area } AHBM = 3\,MIGB,$$

and consequently, the *area* AHBI *is equal to three times the area of the generating circle.*

290. It now remains to determine the area of the spirals. If we represent by s the area described by the radius-vector, we have (Art. 203)

$$ds = \frac{u^2 dt}{2};$$

and placing for u its value at^n (Art. 189)

$$ds = \frac{a^2 t^{2n} dt}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad s = \frac{a^2 t^{2n+1}}{4n+2} + C,$$

and if n is positive $C = 0$, since the area is 0 when $t = 0$. After one revolution of the radius-vector, $t = 2\pi$, and we have

$$s = \frac{a^2 (2\pi)^{2n+1}}{4n+2},$$

which is the area included within the first spire.

291. In the spiral of Archimedes (Art. 192)

$$a = \frac{1}{2\pi} \quad \text{and} \quad n = 1;$$

hence, for this spiral we have

$$s = \frac{t^3}{24\pi^2},$$

which becomes $\frac{\pi}{3}$, after one revolution of the radius-vector; the unit of the number $\frac{\pi}{3}$ being a square whose side is unity. Hence, the area included by the first spire, is equal to one third the area of the circle whose radius is equal to the radius-vector after the first revolution.

In the second revolution, the radius-vector describes a

second time the area described in the first revolution; and in any revolution, it will pass over, or redescribe, all the area before generated. Hence, to find the area at the end of the mth revolution, we must integrate between the limits

$$t = (m-1)2\pi \quad \text{and} \quad t = m.2\pi,$$

which gives

$$\frac{m^3-(m-1)^3}{3}\pi.$$

If it be required to find the area between any two spires, as between the mth and the $(m+1)$th, we have for the whole area to the $(m+1)$th spire equal to

$$\frac{(m+1)^3-m^3}{3}\pi;$$

and subtracting the area to the mth spire, gives

$$\frac{(m+1)^3-2m^3+(m-1)^3}{3}\pi = 2m\pi,$$

for the area between the mth and $(m+1)$th spires.

If we make $m=1$, we shall have the area between the first and second spires equal to 2π: hence, *the area between the* m*th and* $(m+1)$*th spires, is equal to* m *times the area between the first and second.*

292. In the hyperbolic spiral $n=-1$, and we have

$$ds = \frac{a^2t^{-2}}{2}dt \quad \text{and} \quad s = -\frac{a^2}{2t}.$$

The area s will be infinite when $t=0$, but we can find the area included between any two radius-vectors b and c by integrating between the limits $t=b$, $t=c$, which will give

$$s = \frac{a^2}{2}\left(\frac{1}{b}-\frac{1}{c}\right).$$

293. In the logarithmic spiral $t = \log u$: hence, $dt = \frac{du}{u}$,

$$\frac{u^2 dt}{2} = \frac{u du}{2};$$

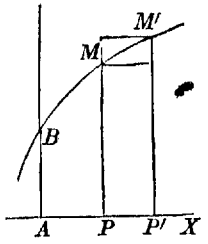
hence, $$s = \int \frac{u du}{2} = \frac{u^2}{4} + C;$$

and by considering the area $s = 0$ when $u = 0$, we have $C = 0$ and

$$s = \frac{u^2}{4}.$$

Determination of the Area of Surfaces of Revolution.

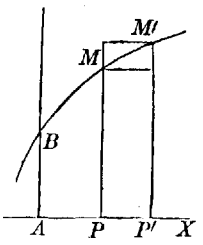
294. If any curve BMM', be revolved about an axis AX, it will describe a surface of revolution, and every plane passing through the axis AX will intersect the surface in a meridian curve. It is required to find the differential of this surface. For this purpose, make $AP = x$, $PM = y$, and $PP' = h$: we shall then have



$$PM = F(x) = y,$$

$$P'M' = F(x+h) = y + \frac{dy}{dx}h + \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \text{\&c.}$$

In the revolution of the curve BMM', the extremities M and M' of the ordinates MP, $M'P'$, will describe the circumferences of two circles, and the chord MM' will describe the curved surface of the frustum of a cone. The surface of this frustum is equal to (Geom: Bk. VIII, Prop. IV.)



$$\frac{(circ.MP + circ.M'P')}{2} \times chord\ MM' : \quad \text{that is, to}$$

$$\frac{(2\pi MP + 2\pi M'P')}{2} \times chord\ MM' = \pi(MP + M'P') \times chord\ MM';$$

and by substituting for MP, $M'P'$ their values, the expression for the area becomes

$$\pi\left(2y + \frac{dy}{dx}h + \frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\frac{h^2}{1.2} + \&c.\right) chord\ MM'.$$

If now we pass to the limit, by making $h = 0$, the chord MM' will become equal to the arc MM' (Art. 128), and the surface of the frustum of the cone will coincide with that of the surface described by the curve at the point M. If we represent the surface by s and the arc of the curve by z, we have, after passing to the limit,

$$ds = 2\pi y dz,$$

and by substituting for dz its value (Art. 128), we have

$$ds = 2\pi y \sqrt{dx^2 + dy^2}:$$

whence, *the differential of a surface of revolution is equal to the circumference of a circle perpendicular to the axis, into the differential of the arc of the meridian curve.*

Remark. It should be observed that X is the axis about which the curve is revolved. If it were revolved about the axis Y, it would be necessary to change x into y and y into x.

295. If a right angled triangle CAB be revolved about the perpendicular CA, the hypothenuse CB will describe the surface of a right cone. If we represent the base BA of the triangle by b, the altitude CA by h, and suppose the origin of co-ordinates at the vertex of the angle C, we shall have

$$x : y :: h : b: \text{ hence}$$
$$y = \frac{b}{h}x \quad \text{and} \quad dy = \frac{b}{h}dx.$$

Substituting these values of y and dy, in the general formula, we have

$$\int 2\pi y\sqrt{dx^2+dy^2} = \int 2\pi \frac{bx}{h^2}dx\sqrt{h^2+b^2} = \pi\frac{bx^2}{h^2}\sqrt{h^2+b^2}+C,$$

and integrating between the limits $x=0$ and $x=h$, we obtain

$$\text{surface of the cone} = \pi b\sqrt{h^2+b^2} = 2\pi b \times \frac{CB}{2}$$
$$= circ.AB \times \frac{CB}{2}.$$

296. If a rectangle $ABCD$ be revolved around the side AD, we can readily find the surface of the right cylinder which will be described by the side BC.

Let us suppose the axis $AD = h$, and $AB = b$: the equation of the line DC will be $y = b$: hence, $dy = 0$. Substituting these values in the general expression of the differential of the surface, we have

$$\int 2\pi y\sqrt{dx^2+dy^2} = \int 2\pi b dx = 2\pi bx + C;$$

and taking the integral between the limits $x = 0$, $x = h$, the ca we have

$$\text{surface} = 2\pi bh = circ.\, AB \times AD.$$

297. To find the surface of a sphere, let us take the equation of the meridian curve, referred to the centre as an origin: it is

$$x^2 + y^2 = R^2,$$

and by differentiating, we have

$$xdx + ydy = 0;$$

hence

$$dy = -\frac{xdx}{y} \quad \text{and} \quad dy^2 = \frac{x^2dx^2}{y^2}.$$

Substituting for dy its value, in the differential of the surface

$$ds = 2\pi y\sqrt{dx^2 + dy^2},$$

we obtain

$$s = \int 2\pi y\sqrt{dx^2 + \frac{x^2}{y^2}dx^2} = \int 2\pi R dx = 2\pi Rx + C.$$

If we estimate the surface from the plane passing through the centre, and perpendicular to the axis of X, we shall have

$$s = 0 \quad \text{for} \quad x = 0, \quad \text{and consequently} \quad C = 0.$$

Now, to find the entire surface of the sphere, we must integrate between the limits $x = +R$ and $x = -R$, and then take the sum of the integrals without reference to their algebraic signs, for these signs only indicate the position of the parts of the surface with respect to the plane passing through the centre of the sphere.